



Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022

2022 asc 1

An Act of Senedd Cymru to establish the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research and to make other provision about tertiary education (which includes higher education, further education and training) and research. [8 September 2022]

Having been passed by Senedd Cymru and having received the assent of Her Majesty, it is enacted as follows:

PART 1

STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK FOR TERTIARY EDUCATION AND RESEARCH

The Commission

1 Establishment of the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research

- (1) The Commission for Tertiary Education and Research (“the Commission”) is established as a body corporate.
- (2) Schedule 1 contains further provision about the Commission.

Commencement Information

- 11** S. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
- 12** S. 1 in force at 15.12.2022 by [S.I. 2022/1318](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

The Commission's strategic duties

2 Promoting life-long learning

The Commission must promote tertiary education for the people of Wales that—

- (a) provides opportunities for people to participate in tertiary education throughout their lives from the age of 16;
- (b) includes a variety of levels of study and types of qualification;
- (c) includes a variety of educational settings and modes of study;
- (d) is organised coherently to facilitate movement of learners through different stages of tertiary education and into employment or business;
- (e) otherwise meets the different requirements of those who may wish to undertake tertiary education.

Commencement Information

- I3** S. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I4 S. 2 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 3\(a\)](#)
I5 S. 2 in force at 1.4.2024 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 4\(a\)](#)

3 Promoting equality of opportunity

(1) The Commission must promote—

- (a) increased participation in Welsh tertiary education by persons who are members of under-represented groups;
- (b) increased participation in the carrying out of research and innovation in Wales by persons who are members of under-represented groups;
- (c) retention of students who are members of under-represented groups to the end of courses of Welsh tertiary education;
- (d) reduction of any gaps in attainment in Welsh tertiary education between different groups of students where the differences arise from social, cultural, economic or organisational factors;
- (e) the provision of support for students finishing courses of Welsh tertiary education who are members of under-represented groups to continue their tertiary education, find employment or start a business.

(2) In this section, “under-represented groups” are—

- (a) in relation to tertiary education, groups that are under-represented in Welsh tertiary education as a result of social, cultural, economic or organisational factors, and
- (b) in relation to research and innovation, groups that are under-represented in the carrying out of research and innovation in Wales as a result of social, cultural, economic or organisational factors.

Commencement Information

- I6** S. 3 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I7 S. 3 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 3\(b\)](#)
I8 S. 3 in force at 1.4.2024 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 4\(a\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

4 Encouraging participation in tertiary education

The Commission must—

- (a) encourage individuals who are ordinarily resident in Wales, in particular those who have additional learning needs, to participate in tertiary education, and
- (b) encourage employers in Wales to participate in the provision of tertiary education.

Commencement Information

- I9** S. 4 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I10 S. 4 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 3\(c\)](#)
I11 S. 4 in force at 1.4.2024 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 4\(a\)](#)

5 Promoting continuous improvement in tertiary education

- (1) The Commission must promote continuous improvement in the quality of Welsh tertiary education.
- (2) In discharging this duty, the Commission must have regard (among other things) to—
 - (a) the importance of ensuring that members of the tertiary education workforce are capable of providing tertiary education of a high quality;
 - (b) the reasonable requirements of members of the tertiary education workforce for continuous professional development;
 - (c) the importance of the views of learners about the quality of the tertiary education they receive.
- (3) In this section, “members of the tertiary education workforce” are—
 - (a) teachers of persons receiving tertiary education,
 - (b) persons who provide support to such teachers, and
 - (c) persons who provide support to learners to participate in tertiary education.

Commencement Information

- I12** S. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I13 S. 5 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 3\(d\)](#)
I14 S. 5 in force at 1.4.2024 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 4\(a\)](#)

6 Promotion of research and innovation

- (1) The Commission must promote—
 - (a) the carrying out of research and innovation in Wales;
 - (b) continuous improvement in the quality of research and innovation carried out by relevant persons, and the competitiveness of that research and innovation compared to research and innovation carried out by other persons;
 - (c) collaboration on research and innovation, both in Wales and elsewhere in the world between—
 - (i) relevant persons;
 - (ii) relevant persons and others;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) the carrying out by relevant persons of research and innovation and of activities related to research and innovation through the medium of Welsh.
- (2) In subsection (1), “relevant person” means—
- (a) a provider specified in regulations under section 105(4);
 - (b) a collaborating body within the meaning given by section 105(4) when carrying out research and innovation in respect of which consent given by the Commission under section 105(5) is in effect.

Commencement Information

- I15** S. 6 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
- I16** S. 6(1)(a) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(e\)](#)
- I17** S. 6(1)(a) in force at 1.8.2024 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))
- I18** S. 6(1)(b)-(d) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))
- I19** S. 6(2) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#) (with [arts. 4\(2\), 28](#))

7 Promoting collaboration and coherence in tertiary education and research

The Commission must promote—

- (a) collaboration between tertiary education providers in Wales, schools in Wales and employers;
- (b) coherence in the provision of tertiary education by tertiary education providers in Wales and the alignment of such provision with research and innovation priorities.

Commencement Information

- I20** S. 7 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
- I21** S. 7 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(f\)](#)
- I22** S. 7 in force at 1.4.2024 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 4\(a\)](#)

8 Contributing to a sustainable and innovative economy

- (1) The Commission must promote tertiary education and research in a way that contributes to the development of a sustainable and innovative economy in Wales.
- (2) In discharging this duty, the Commission must have regard (among other things) to the reasonable requirements of industry, commerce, finance, the professions, other employers and workers.
- (3) For the purpose of subsection (1), a sustainable economy is an economy in which the needs of the present are met without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs.

Commencement Information

- I23** S. 8 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
- I24** S. 8 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(g\)](#)
- I25** S. 8 in force at 1.4.2024 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 4\(a\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

9 Promoting tertiary education through the medium of Welsh

- (1) The Commission must—
 - (a) encourage demand for, and participation in, Welsh tertiary education provided through the medium of Welsh;
 - (b) take all reasonable steps to ensure that there is sufficient Welsh tertiary education provided through the medium of Welsh to meet demand;
 - (c) encourage the provision of tertiary education through the medium of Welsh by—
 - (i) registered providers in Wales, and
 - (ii) other persons providing tertiary education funded or otherwise secured by the Commission.
- (2) The Welsh Ministers must designate a person to give relevant advice to the Commission.
- (3) In this section, “relevant advice” means advice given for the purpose of assisting the Commission in the discharge of its duties under subsection (1).
- (4) A person may be designated under subsection (2) only if the Welsh Ministers consider the person is suitable to give advice on the following—
 - (a) the promotion, maintenance, development and planning of tertiary education provided in Wales through the medium of Welsh,
 - (b) the promotion of the acquisition and improvement of Welsh language skills,
 - (c) the maintenance, development, planning and provision of activities to support the acquisition and improvement of Welsh language skills, and
 - (d) collaboration between tertiary education providers in Wales in relation to the matters mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (c).
- (5) The duty in subsection (1) does not apply if—
 - (a) the Welsh Ministers consider there is no person suitable to give advice on the matters mentioned in subsection (4), or
 - (b) there is no person who consents to be designated.
- (6) The Commission must have regard to any relevant advice given to it by a person designated under subsection (2).
- (7) The Commission must publish a designation made by the Welsh Ministers under subsection (2).
- (8) A designation under subsection (2) may be removed.

Commencement Information

- I26** S. 9 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
- I27** [S. 9\(1\)](#) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(h\)](#)
- I28** [S. 9\(1\)](#) in force at 1.4.2024 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 4\(a\)](#)
- I29** [S. 9\(2\)-\(5\)\(7\)\(8\)](#) in force at 15.12.2022 by [S.I. 2022/1318](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#)
- I30** [S. 9\(6\)](#) in force at 1.4.2024 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 4\(a\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

10 Promoting a civic mission

- (1) The Commission must promote the pursuit of a civic mission by tertiary education providers in Wales that are institutions within the further education sector and the higher education sector.
- (2) The Commission may exercise its functions under this Act to promote the pursuit of a civic mission by other persons (other than the tertiary education providers mentioned in subsection (1)) who are funded by the Commission under this Act.
- (3) In this section, a “civic mission” means action for the purpose of promoting or improving the economic, social, environmental or cultural well-being of Wales (including action aimed at achieving any of the well-being goals in section 4 of the [Well-being of Future Generations \(Wales\) Act 2015 \(anaw 2\)](#)).
- (4) In subsection (3) and in section 11, “well-being of Wales” includes the well-being of—
 - (a) the whole or any part of Wales;
 - (b) all or any persons resident or present in Wales.

Commencement Information

I31 S. 10 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I32 S. 10 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 3\(i\)](#)

I33 S. 10 in force at 1.4.2024 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 4\(a\)](#)

11 Promoting a global outlook

The Commission must promote—

- (a) opportunities in tertiary education for persons ordinarily resident in Wales to study or teach elsewhere in the world;
- (b) opportunities to study or teach in tertiary education in Wales for persons ordinarily resident outside Wales;
- (c) opportunities for the benefits gained from study and teaching of the kind mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) to be used for the economic, social, environmental or cultural well-being of Wales;
- (d) collaboration in tertiary education between tertiary education providers in Wales and those elsewhere in the world;
- (e) opportunities for persons ordinarily resident in Wales and tertiary education providers in Wales to carry out research and innovation elsewhere in the world.

Commencement Information

I34 S. 11 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I35 S. 11 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 3\(j\)](#)

I36 S. 11 in force at 1.4.2024 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 4\(a\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

12 Promoting collaboration between providers of tertiary education and trade unions

- (1) The Commission must promote collaboration between tertiary education providers in Wales and relevant trade unions.
- (2) A trade union is a relevant trade union for the purpose of this section if the Commission considers that collaboration between it and tertiary education providers in Wales is likely to assist the discharge of the Commission's duties under sections 2 to 11, and it is—
 - (a) represented by the body known as Wales TUC Cymru, or
 - (b) if not so represented, the Commission considers it represents members of the tertiary education workforce (within the meaning given by section 5(3)) in Wales.

Commencement Information

- I37** S. 12 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I38 S. 12 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(k\)](#)
I39 S. 12 in force at 1.4.2024 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 4\(a\)](#)

Strategy for tertiary education and research

13 Statement of strategic priorities

- (1) The Welsh Ministers must publish a statement setting out their strategic priorities for and in connection with tertiary education and research and innovation.
- (2) The Welsh Ministers may at any time amend the statement published under subsection (1) (including by replacing it entirely).
- (3) The Welsh Ministers must publish any amendments they make to the statement.

Commencement Information

- I40** S. 13 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I41 S. 13 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

14 Strategic plan for the Commission

- (1) The Commission must prepare a strategic plan setting out how it intends to—
 - (a) discharge its strategic duties under sections 2 to 12, and
 - (b) address the priorities in the Welsh Ministers' statement under section 13.
- (2) In preparing the plan, the Commission must consult such persons as it considers appropriate.

Commencement Information

- I42** S. 14 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

I43 S. 14 in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, art. 2(b)

15 Approval, publication and implementation of strategic plan

- (1) The Commission must send a strategic plan prepared under section 14 to the Welsh Ministers for their approval before the end of a period of 6 months beginning with the day on which the statement is published under section 13(1).
- (2) The Welsh Ministers may—
 - (a) approve the plan, or
 - (b) approve the plan with modifications.
- (3) The Welsh Ministers must seek the agreement of the Commission to each modification they propose making to a plan before they modify it under subsection (2)(b).
- (4) If the Welsh Ministers approve a plan containing a modification that is not agreed by the Commission—
 - (a) the Welsh Ministers must give reasons for that modification to the Commission, and
 - (b) the Commission must publish the reasons given by the Welsh Ministers when it publishes its approved strategic plan.
- (5) The Commission must publish its approved strategic plan.
- (6) The Commission may publish its statement about well-being objectives under section 7 of the [Well-being of Future Generations \(Wales\) Act 2015 \(anaw 2\)](#) by including it in its approved strategic plan.
- (7) The Commission must take all reasonable steps to implement its approved strategic plan.

Commencement Information

- I44** S. 15 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I45 S. 15 in force at 1.4.2024 by S.I. 2023/919, [art. 6\(1\)](#) (with [art. 6\(2\)](#))

16 Review of strategic plan

- (1) If the Welsh Ministers amend their statement under section 13(2) after the Commission has published its approved strategic plan under section 15(5), the Commission must review its strategic plan.
- (2) The Commission may review its strategic plan at any other time.
- (3) The Commission may revise its strategic plan after a review under subsection (1) or (2) if it considers it appropriate to do so.
- (4) If the Commission revises its strategic plan, section 14 applies in relation to the revision of the plan as it applies in relation to the preparation of a plan.
- (5) The Commission must send its revised strategic plan to the Welsh Ministers for their approval—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) where the revision is in consequence of a review under subsection (1), before the end of a period of 6 months beginning with the day on which the Welsh Ministers publish the amendments to their statement, or
 - (b) where the revision is in consequence of a review under subsection (2), as soon as is reasonably practicable.
- (6) Subsections (2) to (7) of section 15 apply to a plan revised under this section as they apply to a plan prepared under section 14.

Commencement Information

- I46** S. 16 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I47 S. 16 in force at 1.4.2024 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 4\(b\)](#)

Academic freedom and institutional autonomy

17 Academic freedom of higher education providers and staff

- (1) In exercising their functions under this Act, the Welsh Ministers and the Commission must have regard to the importance of protecting the academic freedom of—
- (a) tertiary education providers in Wales that provide higher education (so far as the freedom relates to higher education or research and innovation), and
 - (b) academic staff at those providers.
- (2) In this section, “academic freedom” means—
- (a) in relation to tertiary education providers, their freedom to determine—
 - (i) the contents of particular higher education courses and the manner in which they are taught, supervised or assessed,
 - (ii) the criteria for admission of students to higher education courses and to apply those criteria in particular cases, and
 - (iii) the criteria for the selection and appointment of academic staff and to apply those criteria in particular cases;
 - (b) in relation to academic staff, their freedom within the law—
 - (i) to question and test received wisdom, and
 - (ii) to put forward new ideas and controversial or unpopular opinions, without placing themselves in jeopardy of losing their jobs or privileges they may have at the tertiary education providers.

Commencement Information

- I48** S. 17 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I49 S. 17 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(c\)](#)

18 Institutional autonomy of tertiary education providers

In exercising their functions under this Act, the Welsh Ministers and the Commission must have regard to the importance of protecting the freedom within the law of tertiary education providers in Wales to conduct their day to day management in an effective and competent way.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I50 S. 18 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I51 [S. 18](#) in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(d\)](#)

Compatibility with charity law

19 **Compatibility with charity law and governing documents of tertiary education providers**

- (1) Nothing in this Act confers power on the Commission or on the Welsh Ministers to require the governing body of a tertiary education provider to do anything that is incompatible with—
- (a) any legal obligation or legal restriction that applies to the governing body by virtue of the provider being a charity, or
 - (b) the governing documents of the provider.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), the governing documents of a tertiary education provider are—
- (a) in the case of a provider established by Royal Charter—
 - (i) the provider’s Charter, and
 - (ii) any instrument relating to the conduct of the provider the making or amendment of which requires the approval of the Privy Council;
 - (b) in the case of a provider conducted by a higher education corporation (within the meaning given by section 90(1) of the [Further and Higher Education Act 1992 \(c. 13\)](#)), the corporation’s instrument of government and articles of government;
 - (c) in the case of a provider conducted by a further education corporation (within the meaning given by section 17(1) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992), the corporation’s instrument of government and articles of government;
 - (d) in the case of a provider that is an institution designated under section 129 of the [Education Reform Act 1988 \(c. 40\)](#) or section 28 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992, the provider’s instrument of government and articles of government;
 - (e) in the case of a provider that is a school, the school’s instrument of government (if any);
 - (f) in the case of a provider that is conducted by a company, the company’s memorandum and articles of association.

Commencement Information

I52 S. 19 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I53 [S. 19](#) in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(e\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Welsh Ministers' guidance and directions

20 Guidance

In exercising its functions, the Commission must have regard to guidance given to it by the Welsh Ministers.

Commencement Information

I54 S. 20 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I55 S. 20 in force at 4.9.2023 by **S.I. 2023/919, art. 2(f)**

21 The Welsh Ministers' power to give general directions

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may give the Commission general directions about the exercise of any of its functions.
- (2) Directions under this section may be framed by reference to a particular course of study, but must not require the Commission to exercise a function in a way which prohibits or requires the provision of a particular course of study.
- (3) The directions must not be framed by reference to—
 - (a) a particular registered provider,
 - (b) a particular person other than a registered provider in receipt of financial resources provided or secured by the Commission under Part 3,
 - (c) particular parts of courses of study,
 - (d) particular programmes of research or innovation projects,
 - (e) the content of courses of study, programmes of research or innovation projects,
 - (f) the manner in which such courses, programmes or projects are taught, supervised or assessed,
 - (g) the criteria for the selection, appointment or dismissal of academic staff, or how they are applied, or
 - (h) the criteria for the admission of students, or how they are applied.
- (4) Subsections (2) and (3) do not prevent directions under this section being framed by reference to courses of study or parts of courses of study being provided and assessed through the medium of Welsh.
- (5) Directions under this section may be framed by reference to an area of research or innovation but only if that area is specified in the Commission's strategic plan approved under section 15.
- (6) Before giving a direction under this section, the Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission.
- (7) If the Welsh Ministers give a direction under this section, they must—
 - (a) publish the direction,
 - (b) report to Senedd Cymru that a direction has been given and lay a copy of the direction before the Senedd, and
 - (c) keep the direction under review.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(8) The Commission must comply with a direction given under this section.

Commencement Information

- I56** S. 21 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I57 S. 21 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(g\)](#)

Additional functions

22 Additional functions of the Commission

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, confer on the Commission supplementary functions.
- (2) A “supplementary function” is a function that—
 - (a) is exercisable for the purposes of a function of the Welsh Ministers, and
 - (b) relates to—
 - (i) the provision, or proposed provision, of tertiary education, or
 - (ii) the carrying out, or proposed carrying out, of research and innovation.
- (3) Subsections (4) and (5) apply where—
 - (a) land or other property is or was used or held for the purposes of a tertiary education provider in Wales that is an institution within the higher education sector or the further education sector, and
 - (b) the Welsh Ministers are entitled to any right or interest in respect of the property, or would be so entitled on the occurrence of an event.
- (4) The Welsh Ministers may direct that all or any of the Welsh Ministers’ functions in respect of the property are exercisable on their behalf by the Commission.
- (5) The Commission must exercise those functions in accordance with directions given by the Welsh Ministers.

Commencement Information

- I58** S. 22 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I59 S. 22 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(h\)](#)

Dissolution of Higher Education Funding Council for Wales

23 Dissolution of the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales

The Higher Education Funding Council for Wales ceases to exist.

Commencement Information

- I60** S. 23 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I61 S. 23 in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

24 Transfer schemes

Schedule 2 makes provision about schemes for the transfer of staff and property, rights and liabilities from the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales and the Welsh Ministers to the Commission.

Commencement Information

I62 S. 24 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I63 S. 24 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(i\)](#)

PART 2

REGISTRATION AND REGULATION OF TERTIARY EDUCATION PROVIDERS

CHAPTER 1

REGISTRATION OF TERTIARY EDUCATION PROVIDERS

The register and registration procedure

25 The register

- (1) The Commission must establish and maintain a register of tertiary education providers in Wales (referred to in this Act as “the register”).
- (2) The Welsh Ministers must, by regulations, specify one or more categories of registration for which the Commission must make provision in the register.
- (3) A category of registration specified in the regulations must relate to the provision of one or more kinds of tertiary education.
- (4) The Commission must register a tertiary education provider in a category of the register if—
 - (a) its governing body applies for it to be registered in the category,
 - (b) it is a tertiary education provider in Wales,
 - (c) it provides, or has provided on its behalf, the kind of tertiary education that relates to the category,
 - (d) it satisfies the initial registration conditions applicable to it in respect of the registration sought (see section 27),
 - (e) registration is not prohibited by provision made in regulations under subsection (5), and
 - (f) the application complies with any requirements imposed under subsection (7).
- (5) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, prohibit the registration of a tertiary education provider in one category of the register at the same time that it is registered in one or more of the other categories.
- (6) The Commission must not register a tertiary education provider in the register otherwise than—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in a category of registration specified in regulations under subsection (2);
 - (b) in accordance with subsection (4), section 44 (change in registration category without application) and any regulations made under subsection (5).
- (7) The Commission may determine—
- (a) the form of an application for registration,
 - (b) the information to be contained in it or provided with it, and
 - (c) the way in which an application is to be submitted.
- (8) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, make provision about the information which must be contained in a tertiary education provider’s entry in the register.
- (9) Once registered, a tertiary education provider’s ongoing registration in a category of the register is subject to the provider satisfying—
- (a) the general ongoing registration conditions applicable to the provider’s registration in the category and as they may be later revised (see section 28), and
 - (b) the specific ongoing registration conditions (if any) imposed on it in that category of registration and as they may be later varied (see section 29).
- (10) References in this Part to the ongoing registration conditions of a tertiary education provider are to the conditions mentioned in subsection (9)(a) and (b).
- (11) The Commission must make the information contained in the register, and the information previously contained in it, publicly available by such means as it considers appropriate.

Commencement Information

- I64** S. 25 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**
- I65** S. 25 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by **S.I. 2023/919, art. 3(l)**
- I66** S. 25(1)(4)(6)(a)(b) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by **S.I. 2023/919, art. 3(m)**
- I67** S. 25(4)(d) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by **S.I. 2023/919, art. 3(n)**
- I68** S. 25(7) in force at 4.9.2023 by **S.I. 2023/919, art. 2(j)**
- I69** S. 25(9)(a) in force at 4.9.2023 by **S.I. 2023/919, art. 3(o)**
- I70** S. 25(10) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by **S.I. 2023/919, art. 3(o)**

PROSPECTIVE

26 Registration procedure

- (1) Before refusing an application to register a tertiary education provider in a category of the register, the Commission must notify the governing body of the provider that it proposes to do so.
- (2) The notice must specify—
- (a) the Commission’s reasons for proposing to refuse to register the tertiary education provider in the category,
 - (b) the period during which the governing body of the provider may make representations about the proposal (“the specified period”), and
 - (c) the way in which those representations may be made.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) The specified period must not be less than 28 days beginning with the date on which the notice is received.
- (4) The Commission must have regard to any representations made by the governing body of the tertiary education provider in accordance with the notice in deciding whether to register it in the category.
- (5) Having decided whether or not to register the tertiary education provider in the category, the Commission must notify the governing body of the provider of its decision.
- (6) Where the decision is to register the tertiary education provider in the category, the notice must specify—
 - (a) the date of entry in the register in the category, and
 - (b) the ongoing registration conditions applicable to the provider’s registration in the category at that time.
- (7) Where the decision is to refuse to register the provider in the category, the notice must specify—
 - (a) the grounds for the refusal,
 - (b) information as to the right of review, and
 - (c) the period specified in regulations under section 79(4)(c) within which an application for a review may be made.

Commencement Information

I71 S. 26 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Registration conditions

27 Initial registration conditions

- (1) It is an initial condition of registration in each category of the register that the Commission is satisfied as to—
 - (a) the quality of the kind of tertiary education provided by, or on behalf of, the applicant tertiary education provider to which the category of the register relates;
 - (b) the effectiveness of the governance and management of the applicant tertiary education provider (including its financial management);
 - (c) the financial sustainability of the applicant tertiary education provider;
 - (d) the effectiveness of the applicant tertiary education provider’s arrangements for supporting and promoting the welfare of its students and staff;
 - (e) where there are validation arrangements in place, the effectiveness of those arrangements in enabling the applicant tertiary education provider to satisfy itself as to the quality of the education leading to the award of a qualification under the arrangements.
- (2) The Commission must publish a document specifying the requirements that must be met for it to be satisfied as to the matters mentioned in subsection (1).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) The Commission may revise the requirements.
- (4) If the Commission revises the requirements, it must publish a revised document specifying the requirements as revised.
- (5) Before publishing the document or revised document, the Commission must, if it appears to it appropriate to do so, consult such persons as it considers appropriate.
- (6) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, provide for further initial conditions of registration for any category of registration.
- (7) Regulations under subsection (6) may (among other things)—
 - (a) confer functions on the Commission in connection with the operation of further initial conditions provided for in the regulations;
 - (b) provide for further initial conditions of registration relating to—
 - (i) the charitable or other status of tertiary education providers;
 - (ii) the information provided to prospective students about a provider, its courses, and its terms and conditions of contracts with students;
 - (iii) complaints procedures of providers.
- (8) In subsection (1)(e), “validation arrangements” means arrangements between an applicant tertiary education provider and another education provider under which the applicant tertiary education provider awards a qualification to a student at the other provider or authorises the other provider to award a qualification on its behalf.

Commencement Information

I72 S. 27 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I73 S. 27 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 3\(p\)](#)

I74 S. 27(1)(2)(8) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 3\(q\)](#)

28 General ongoing registration conditions

- (1) The Commission must determine and publish general ongoing registration conditions.
- (2) Different conditions may be determined for different categories of registration.
- (3) In relation to a category of registration, different conditions may be determined for different descriptions of tertiary education provider.
- (4) The Commission must publish the general ongoing registration conditions in a way that identifies the category of registration to which the condition applies.
- (5) The Commission may revise the conditions.
- (6) If the Commission revises the conditions, it must publish them as revised.
- (7) Before determining or revising the conditions, the Commission must, if it appears to it appropriate to do so, consult such persons as it considers appropriate.
- (8) The Commission may, at the time of a tertiary education provider’s registration in a category of the register or later, decide that any one or more general ongoing registration conditions applicable to registration in that category is not applicable to

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

the provider, subject to the requirements under this Part relating to mandatory ongoing registration conditions.

- (9) Where the decision is made after the tertiary education provider’s registration in that category of the register, the Commission must notify the governing body of the provider of its decision.

Commencement Information

I75 S. 28 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I76 [S. 28\(1\)-\(3\)](#) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(r\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

29 Specific ongoing registration conditions

- (1) The Commission may, at the time of a tertiary education provider’s registration in a category of the register or later, impose such conditions on its registration in the category as the Commission may determine (“the specific ongoing registration conditions”).
- (2) The Commission may at any time vary or remove a specific ongoing registration condition.
- (3) Before—
- (a) imposing a specific ongoing registration condition, or
 - (b) varying or removing a specific ongoing registration condition,
- the Commission must notify the governing body of the tertiary education provider that it proposes to do so.
- (4) The notice must—
- (a) specify the Commission’s reasons for proposing to take the step in question,
 - (b) specify the period during which the governing body of the tertiary education provider may make representations about the proposal (“the specified period”), and
 - (c) specify the way in which those representations may be made.
- (5) The specified period must not be less than 28 days beginning with the date on which the notice is received.
- (6) The Commission must have regard to any representations made by the governing body of the tertiary education provider in accordance with the notice in deciding whether to take the step in question.
- (7) Having decided whether or not to take the step in question, the Commission must—
- (a) notify the governing body of the tertiary education provider of its decision, and
 - (b) publish the notice.
- (8) If the Commission decides to impose a new specific ongoing registration condition or vary or remove a specific ongoing registration condition, the notice must—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) specify the new condition, the condition as varied or the condition being removed (as the case may be), and
 - (b) specify the date when the imposition, variation or removal takes effect.
- (9) Where the notice relates to the imposition or variation of a specific ongoing registration condition, the notice must also specify—
- (a) the grounds for the imposition or variation of the condition,
 - (b) information as to the right of review, and
 - (c) the period specified in regulations under section 79(4)(c) within which an application for a review may be made.
- (10) A specific ongoing registration condition, or a variation to such a condition, may not take effect at any time when—
- (a) an application for review under section 45(b) could be brought in respect of the decision to impose or vary the condition, or
 - (b) a review or a decision by the Commission following such a review is pending.
- (11) But that does not prevent a specific ongoing registration condition, or a variation to such a condition, taking effect if the governing body of the tertiary education provider notifies the Commission that it does not intend to apply for a review.
- (12) Where subsection (10) ceases to prevent a specific ongoing registration condition, or a variation to such a condition, taking effect on the date specified under subsection (8), the Commission must determine a future date on which it takes effect.
- (13) But that is subject to what has been determined by the Commission following any review under section 45(b) in respect of the decision to impose or vary the condition.

Commencement Information

I77 S. 29 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

30 Proportionate conditions etc.

- (1) The Commission must ensure that—
- (a) the requirements specified under section 27(2), and
 - (b) all ongoing registration conditions,
- are proportionate to the Commission’s assessment of the risks posed.
- (2) In light of its duty under subsection (1), the Commission must keep all ongoing registration conditions under review.

Commencement Information

I78 S. 30 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I79 [S. 30\(1\)](#) in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(k\)](#)

31 Mandatory ongoing registration conditions for each registered provider

- (1) The Commission must ensure that the ongoing registration conditions of each tertiary education provider registered in a category include—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) a condition relating to the quality of the kind of tertiary education provided by, or on behalf of, the provider to which the category of registration relates;
- (b) a condition relating to the effectiveness of the governance and management of the provider (including its financial management);
- (c) a condition relating to the financial sustainability of the provider;
- (d) a condition relating to the effectiveness of the provider’s arrangements for supporting and promoting the welfare of its students and staff;
- (e) a condition relating to the effectiveness of any validation arrangements in place;
- (f) a condition requiring the governing body of the provider to notify the Commission of any change of which it becomes aware which affects the accuracy of the information contained in the provider’s entry in the register;
- (g) a condition requiring the governing body of the provider, if it has been given notice under section 126(1), to have in place a learner protection plan approved by the Commission (under section 126(3) or (5)) on or before the date specified in the condition and to give effect to the plan;
- (h) a condition requiring the governing body of the provider to comply with the requirements contained in the Learner Engagement Code published under section 129(1) or any revised code published under section 129(3);
- (i) a condition requiring the governing body of the provider to have regard to advice or guidance given by the Commission to the body (either specifically or to persons generally) in exercise of the Commission’s functions under this Act;
- (j) a condition requiring the governing body of the provider to provide the Commission, or a person authorised by the Commission, with such information, assistance and access to the provider’s facilities, systems and equipment as the Commission may reasonably require for the purpose of exercising the Commission’s functions under this Part.

- (2) In subsection (1)(e), “validation arrangements” means arrangements between the registered provider and another education provider under which the registered provider awards a qualification to a student at the other provider or authorises the other provider to award a qualification on its behalf.

Commencement Information

I80 S. 31 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I81 [S. 31\(1\)\(a\)-\(f\)\(i\)\(j\)\(2\)](#) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(s\)](#)

32 Mandatory ongoing registration condition on fee limits

- (1) The Commission must ensure that the ongoing registration conditions of each registered provider—
- (a) falling within a fee limit category, and
 - (b) providing qualifying courses, or having qualifying courses provided on its behalf,
- include a fee limit condition.
- (2) A fee limit category is a category of registration—
- (a) for which the Commission must make provision in the register, and

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) which is specified for the purpose of this section in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.
- (3) A fee limit condition is a condition that requires the governing body of a registered provider to—
 - (a) have a fee limit statement approved under section 47, and
 - (b) secure that regulated course fees do not exceed the applicable fee limit.
- (4) A qualifying course is a course of a description specified in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers to which subsection (5) applies.
- (5) This subsection applies to a course provided—
 - (a) at one or more places in Wales or elsewhere,
 - (b) by means of correspondence, equipment or other facility that enables persons who are not in the same place (whether in Wales or elsewhere) to participate in teaching or studying the course, or
 - (c) by a combination of the ways described in paragraphs (a) and (b).
- (6) The power to specify a description of course under subsection (4) must not be exercised so as to discriminate—
 - (a) in relation to courses of initial teacher training, between different courses on the basis of the subjects in which such training is given;
 - (b) in relation to other courses, between different courses at the same or a comparable level on the basis of the areas of study or research to which they relate.
- (7) Regulated course fees are fees payable to the tertiary education provider by a qualifying person—
 - (a) in connection with the person undertaking a qualifying course, and
 - (b) in respect of an academic year applicable to that course, where the year begins on a day when the applicable provisions in the fee limit statement have effect.
- (8) The applicable fee limit is—
 - (a) in a case where the tertiary education provider’s fee limit statement specifies a fee limit for the course and year in question, that limit;
 - (b) in a case where the provider’s fee limit statement provides for the determination of a fee limit for the course and year in question, that limit as determined in accordance with the statement.
- (9) A qualifying person is a person who—
 - (a) is not an international student, and
 - (b) falls within any class of persons specified in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers for the purposes of this Part.
- (10) An international student is a person who may or must be charged higher fees by virtue of regulations made under section 1 of the [Education \(Fees and Awards\) Act 1983 \(c. 40\)](#) (charging of higher fees in case of students not having prescribed connection with the United Kingdom).
- (11) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, make provision for circumstances in which fees payable to a person, in connection with a qualifying person’s undertaking a course, or part of a course, provided on behalf of a tertiary education provider, are to be treated

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

for the purposes of subsection (7) and section 46 as being payable to that provider in connection with the qualifying person’s undertaking the course.

Commencement Information

I82 S. 32 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I83 S. 32 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(t\)\(u\)](#)

33 Mandatory ongoing registration conditions on equal opportunity

(1) The Commission must ensure that the ongoing registration conditions of each registered provider include conditions requiring the delivery of measurable outcomes to further each of the aims in subsection (2).

(2) The aims are—

- (a) increasing participation in relevant tertiary education provided by, or on behalf of, the registered provider by persons who are members of under-represented groups;
- (b) retention of students who are members of under-represented groups to the end of courses of relevant tertiary education provided by, or on behalf of, the registered provider;
- (c) reduction of any gaps in attainment in relevant tertiary education provided by, or on behalf of, the registered provider between different groups of students specified in the conditions, where the differences arise from social, cultural, economic or organisational factors;
- (d) provision of support for students finishing courses of relevant tertiary education provided by, or on behalf of, the registered provider who are members of under-represented groups to continue their tertiary education, find employment or start a business.

(3) In this section—

“relevant tertiary education” (“*addysg drydyddol berthnasol*”) means courses of tertiary education provided wholly or mainly in Wales and of a kind that relates to the category of the register in which the provider in question is registered;

“under-represented groups” (“*grwpiau sydd heb gynrychiolaeth ddigonol*”) are groups specified in the conditions that are under-represented in relevant tertiary education as a result of social, cultural, economic or organisational factors.

Commencement Information

I84 S. 33 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I85 S. 33 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(u\)](#)

34 Power to provide for further mandatory ongoing registration conditions

The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, provide for further mandatory ongoing registration conditions applicable to one or more of the categories of registration.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I86 S. 34 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I87 S. 34 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(l\)](#)

35 Commission duty to give guidance about ongoing registration conditions

The Commission must publish guidance for registered providers about ongoing registration conditions.

Commencement Information

I88 S. 35 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I89 S. 35 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(v\)](#)

Monitoring and enforcement of registration conditions

36 Commission duty to monitor compliance with ongoing registration conditions

The Commission must monitor compliance with ongoing registration conditions by registered providers.

Commencement Information

I90 S. 36 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I91 S. 36 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(w\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

37 Advice and assistance in respect of compliance with ongoing registration conditions

The Commission may provide, or make arrangements for the provision of, advice or other assistance to a registered provider for the purpose of securing compliance by the provider with its ongoing registration conditions.

Commencement Information

I92 S. 37 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PROSPECTIVE

38 Reviews relevant to compliance with ongoing registration conditions

The Commission may carry out, or arrange for another person to carry out, a review of any matters that it considers relevant to compliance by a registered provider with its ongoing registration conditions.

Commencement Information

I93 S. 38 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

39 Directions in respect of failure to comply with ongoing registration conditions

- (1) The Commission may give the governing body of a tertiary education provider a direction under this section if it is satisfied that the governing body has failed, or is likely to fail, to comply with an ongoing registration condition.
- (2) In the case of a failure, or likely failure, to comply with an ongoing registration condition, the Commission may direct the governing body to comply with the condition.
- (3) In the case of a failure to comply with a fee limit condition, the Commission may also, as an alternative or in addition to a direction described in subsection (2), direct the governing body to reimburse excess fees paid to the tertiary education provider.
- (4) A direction under this section may specify steps that are (or are not) to be taken by the governing body for the purpose of compliance with the condition.
- (5) A direction of the kind described in subsection (3) may specify the manner in which reimbursement of excess fees is to be, or may be, effected.
- (6) If the Commission gives a direction under this section, it must—
 - (a) give a copy of the direction to the Welsh Ministers;
 - (b) publish the direction.
- (7) “Excess fees” are regulated course fees to the extent that those fees exceed the applicable fee limit (as quantified for the purposes of the duty under section 32 with which the governing body has failed to comply).
- (8) For procedural provision about directions under this section, see sections 75 to 78.

Commencement Information

I94 S. 39 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PROSPECTIVE

40 Supplementary provision about directions under section 39

- (1) The Commission may issue guidance about steps to be taken for the purpose of complying with a direction under section 39.
- (2) Before issuing guidance under this section the Commission must consult the governing body of each registered provider; and may consult the governing body of any other tertiary education provider in Wales as it considers appropriate.

Commencement Information

I95 S. 40 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

De-registration

41 De-registration

- (1) The Commission must remove a tertiary education provider from a category of the register if the Commission becomes aware that the provider—
 - (a) is no longer a tertiary education provider in Wales, or
 - (b) no longer provides, or has provided on its behalf, the kind of tertiary education that relates to the category.
- (2) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, specify other circumstances in which a registered provider must be removed from one or more categories of the register or all categories of the register.
- (3) The Commission may remove a registered provider from a category of the register if condition A or B is satisfied.
- (4) Condition A is satisfied if—
 - (a) the Commission has previously exercised its powers under section 39 (directions in respect of failure to comply with ongoing registration conditions) in relation to breach of one of the tertiary education provider’s ongoing registration conditions that apply to the category of registration, and
 - (b) it appears to the Commission that—
 - (i) there is again a breach, or a continuing breach, of that condition, or
 - (ii) there is or has been a breach of a different one of the provider’s ongoing registration conditions that apply to the category of registration.
- (5) Condition B is satisfied if it appears to the Commission that—
 - (a) there is or has been a breach of one of the tertiary education provider’s ongoing registration conditions that apply to the category of registration, and
 - (b) its powers under section 39 are insufficient to deal with the breach (whether or not they have been, are being or are to be, exercised in relation to it).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, make transitional or saving provision in connection with the removal of a tertiary education provider from a category of the register under this section.
- (7) Regulations under subsection (6) may include provision treating the tertiary education provider as a registered provider for such purposes as the regulations may specify.
- (8) The Commission must—
 - (a) maintain a list of tertiary education providers removed from a category of the register under this section,
 - (b) include in that list reference to any regulations made under subsection (6), and
 - (c) make the list publicly available by such means as it considers appropriate.

Commencement Information

I96 S. 41 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I97 S. 41 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(x\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

42 De-registration: procedure

- (1) Before removing a registered provider from a category of the register under section 41, the Commission must notify the governing body of the provider that it proposes to do so.
- (2) The notice must specify—
 - (a) the Commission’s reasons for proposing to remove the provider from a category of the register,
 - (b) the period during which the governing body of the provider may make representations about the proposal (“the specified period”), and
 - (c) the way in which those representations may be made.
- (3) The specified period must not be less than 28 days beginning with the date on which the notice is received.
- (4) The Commission must have regard to any representations made by the governing body of the provider in accordance with the notice in deciding whether to remove it from a category of the register.
- (5) Having decided whether or not to remove the provider from a category of the register, the Commission must notify the governing body of the provider of its decision.
- (6) Where the decision is to remove the provider from a category of the register, the notice must specify the date on which the removal takes effect.
- (7) The notice must also specify—
 - (a) the grounds for the removal,
 - (b) information as to the right of review, and
 - (c) the period specified in regulations under section 79(4)(c) within which an application for review may be made.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (8) A removal under section 41 may not take effect at any time when—
 - (a) an application for a review under section 45(c) or (d) could be brought in respect of the decision to remove, or
 - (b) a review or a decision by the Commission following such a review is pending.
- (9) But that does not prevent a removal taking effect if the governing body of the provider notifies the Commission that it does not intend to apply for a review.
- (10) Where subsection (8) ceases to prevent a removal taking effect on the date specified under subsection (6), the Commission must determine a future date on which the removal takes effect.
- (11) But that is subject to what has been determined by the Commission following any review under section 45(c) or (d) in respect of the decision to remove.

Commencement Information

198 S. 42 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

43 Voluntary de-registration and de-registration with consent

- (1) The Commission must remove a registered provider from a category of the register if—
 - (a) the governing body of the provider applies to the Commission for the provider to be removed from that category of the register, and
 - (b) the application complies with any requirements imposed under subsection (6).
- (2) But if the application under subsection (1)(a) specifies that it is combined with an application under section 25(4)(a) for registration in another category, the duty in subsection (1) does not apply unless the condition in subsection (3) applies or both of the conditions in subsection (4) apply.
- (3) The condition in this subsection is that the Commission is required to register the provider in the other category in accordance with the application under section 25(4)(a).
- (4) The conditions in this subsection are—
 - (a) that the Commission would be required to register the provider in the other category in accordance with the application under section 25(4)(a) were it not for the effect of section 25(4)(e) in relation to the categories of registration that are the subject of the application under subsection (1)(a) and section 25(4)(a), and
 - (b) that the Commission would be required to register the provider in the other category if the provider is removed from the category in respect of which the application under subsection (1)(a) is made.
- (5) The Commission may remove a registered provider from a category of the register if the governing body of the provider consents.
- (6) The Commission may determine—
 - (a) the form of an application under subsection (1),
 - (b) the information to be contained in it or provided with it, and

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) the way in which an application is to be submitted.
- (7) The Commission must notify the governing body of the provider of the date on which the provider is removed from the category of the register under this section (“the removal date”).
- (8) The Commission may vary the removal date at any time before that date by notifying the governing body of the provider.
- (9) A removal under this section may not take effect at any time when—
- (a) an application for a review under section 45(d) could be brought in respect of the decision to remove, or
 - (b) a review or a decision by the Commission following a such review is pending.
- (10) But that does not prevent a removal taking effect if the governing body of the provider notifies the Commission that it does not intend to apply for a review.
- (11) Where subsection (9) ceases to prevent a removal taking effect on the date specified under subsection (7), the Commission must determine a future date on which the removal takes effect.
- (12) But that is subject to what has been determined by the Commission following any review under section 45(d) in respect of the decision to remove.
- (13) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, make transitional or saving provision in connection with the removal of a provider from a category of the register under this section.
- (14) Regulations under subsection (13) may include provision treating the provider as a registered provider in that category for such purposes as the regulations may specify.
- (15) The Commission must—
- (a) maintain a list of tertiary education providers removed from categories of the register under this section,
 - (b) include in that list reference to any regulations made under subsection (13), and
 - (c) make the list publicly available by such means as it considers appropriate.

Commencement Information

I99 S. 43 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I100 S. 43 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(y\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

44 Change of registration category without application

Where a registered provider is removed from a category of the register under section 41(3) or 43(5), the Commission may register the provider in another category without an application under section 25(4)(a) if—

- (a) the governing body of the provider consents,
- (b) it continues to be a tertiary education provider in Wales,

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) it provides, or has provided on its behalf, the kind of tertiary education that relates to the other category,
- (d) it satisfies the initial registration conditions applicable to it in respect of the registration in the other category (see section 27), and
- (e) registration in the other category is not prohibited by provision made in regulations under section 25(5).

Commencement Information

I101 S. 44 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

Registration decision reviews

45 Registration decision reviews

The governing body of a tertiary education provider may apply for a review by the decision reviewer of any of the following decisions —

- (a) a decision of the Commission to refuse to register the provider in a category of the register under section 25;
- (b) a decision of the Commission to impose or vary a specific ongoing registration condition on the provider under section 29;
- (c) a decision of the Commission to remove the provider from a category of the register under section 41;
- (d) a decision of the Commission as to the date specified under section 42(6) or section 43(7) or (8) as the date on which a removal of the provider from a category of the register takes effect.

Commencement Information

I102 S. 45 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Fee limit statements

46 Requirements of a fee limit statement

- (1) A fee limit statement is a document that complies with this section.
- (2) A fee limit statement must—
 - (a) specify a fee limit, or
 - (b) provide for the determination of a fee limit,
 in relation to each qualifying course and in respect of each relevant academic year.
- (3) A fee limit statement may specify, or provide for the determination of, different fee limits in relation to different courses and in respect of different relevant academic years.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) A fee limit statement must specify the date on which it begins to have effect and any variation of a fee limit statement must specify the date on which the variation begins to have effect.
- (5) In this Part—
 - (a) a fee limit, in relation to a course, is a limit that the fees payable to the tertiary education provider by a qualifying person, in connection with the person’s undertaking the course, must not exceed;
 - (b) a relevant academic year, in relation to a course, is an academic year that is applicable to the course, and in respect of which fees are payable to the provider, and which begins on a day when the applicable provisions in the fee limit statement have effect.
- (6) Where a fee limit statement specifies a fee limit in relation to a year and course, the fee limit specified must not exceed whatever amount is specified in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers for the purposes of this section (“the maximum amount”).
- (7) Where a fee limit statement provides for the determination of a fee limit in relation to a year and course, the statement must specify that the fee limit determined in accordance with the statement is not to exceed the maximum amount.

Commencement Information

I103 S. 46 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I104 S. 46 in force at 4.9.2023 by **S.I. 2023/919, art. 2(m)**

47 Approval of fee limit statement

- (1) The governing body of a tertiary education provider in Wales may apply to the Commission for the Commission’s approval of a proposed fee limit statement relating to the provider.
- (2) If an application for approval of a fee limit statement is made to the Commission, the Commission must by notice to the governing body concerned either—
 - (a) approve the statement, or
 - (b) reject the statement.
- (3) The governing body of a provider with an approved fee limit statement may apply to the Commission for approval of a variation or replacement of the statement.
- (4) If an application for approval of a variation or replacement is made, the Commission must by notice to the governing body either—
 - (a) approve the variation or replacement, or
 - (b) reject the variation or replacement.
- (5) An approved fee limit statement ceases to be approved if the provider to which it relates ceases to be registered in a category of registration specified under section 32(2)(b) to which the statement relates.
- (6) For procedural provision about notice under subsections (2)(b) and (4)(b), see sections 75 to 78.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I105 S. 47 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I106 S. 47(1)-(5) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(z\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

48 Publication of approved fee limit statement

- (1) Where the Commission has approved a fee limit statement, the governing body of the provider to which the statement relates must publish the statement (and any approved variation or replacement of the statement).
- (2) In discharging its duty under subsection (1), the governing body must have regard to the need to make the statement easily accessible to students and prospective students.

Commencement Information

I107 S. 48 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

49 Validity of contracts

- (1) This section applies to a contract that provides for the payment of regulated course fees to a tertiary education provider, by a qualifying person and in connection with the person's undertaking a qualifying course, that exceed the applicable fee limit.
- (2) For the purposes of any rights and liabilities arising under the contract, and any proceedings in respect of those rights and liabilities, the contract is to be treated as providing for the payment of fees in an amount equivalent to the applicable fee limit.
- (3) Except as provided in subsection (2), the contract is not void or unenforceable in consequence of providing for the payment of fees exceeding the applicable fee limit.

Commencement Information

I108 S. 49 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

CHAPTER 2

QUALITY ASSURANCE AND IMPROVING QUALITY

General quality assurance functions

50 Quality assurance frameworks

- (1) The Commission may publish quality assurance frameworks.
- (2) A quality assurance framework is a document setting out guidance and information on matters of policy and practice concerning—
 - (a) criteria for assessing the quality of tertiary education;
 - (b) processes for assessing the quality of tertiary education;
 - (c) the roles and responsibilities of—
 - (i) persons assessing the quality of tertiary education,
 - (ii) providers of tertiary education as regards the quality of tertiary education, and
 - (iii) any other persons as regards the quality of tertiary education as the Commission considers appropriate;
 - (d) consideration of the views of learners about the quality of the tertiary education they receive;
 - (e) the professional development of members of the tertiary education workforce;
 - (f) any other matter the Commission considers relevant to assurance of the quality of tertiary education.
- (3) The Commission may revise, replace or withdraw any quality assurance framework published under this section.
- (4) Before publishing a framework (or any revised framework) or withdrawing a framework under this section, the Commission must consult—
 - (a) each registered provider,
 - (b) Her Majesty’s Chief Inspector of Education and Training in Wales (“the Chief Inspector”), and
 - (c) any other persons the Commission considers appropriate.
- (5) The persons mentioned in subsection (6) must, so far as relevant to the exercise of their functions, have regard to a quality assurance framework published under this section.
- (6) The persons are—
 - (a) the Commission;
 - (b) the Chief Inspector;
 - (c) a designated body (see section 56).
- (7) Nothing in this section affects the Commission’s other powers to issue guidance.
- (8) “Members of the tertiary education workforce” has the same meaning as in section 5.

Commencement Information

I109 S. 50 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I110 S. 50(1)-(3)(4)(b)(c)(7)(8) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 2\(c\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

I111 S. 50(4)(a) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, **art. 5(1)** (with arts. 5(2), 28)

PROSPECTIVE

51 Duty to monitor, and promote improvement in, the quality of regulated tertiary education

The Commission must monitor, and promote improvement in, the quality of tertiary education—

- (a) provided by, or on behalf of, registered providers (so far as the tertiary education relates to the providers' categories of registration);
- (b) funded or otherwise secured by the Commission.

Commencement Information

I112 S. 51 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

PROSPECTIVE

52 Advice and assistance in respect of quality of tertiary education

- (1) This section applies to tertiary education, or a particular course of tertiary education—
 - (a) provided by, or on behalf of, a registered provider,
 - (b) funded or otherwise secured by the Commission, or
 - (c) provided in Wales and not falling within paragraph (a) or (b).
- (2) The Commission may provide, or make arrangements for the provision of, advice or other assistance to any person for the purpose of—
 - (a) improving the quality of the tertiary education or course, or
 - (b) preventing the quality of the tertiary education or course from becoming inadequate.
- (3) For the purposes of this section, the quality of tertiary education, or of a course of tertiary education, is inadequate if it is not adequate to meet the reasonable needs of those receiving the education or undertaking the course.

Commencement Information

I113 S. 52 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PROSPECTIVE

53 Reviews relevant to quality of tertiary education

The Commission may carry out, or arrange for another person to carry out, a review of any matters that it considers relevant to the quality of tertiary education, or a particular course of tertiary education—

- (a) provided by, or on behalf of, a registered provider,
- (b) funded or otherwise secured by the Commission, or
- (c) provided in Wales and not falling within paragraph (a) or (b).

Commencement Information

I114 S. 53 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Assessment of quality in higher education

54 Assessment of quality of higher education

- (1) The Commission must assess, or make arrangements for the assessment of, the quality of higher education provided—
 - (a) by each registered provider;
 - (b) on behalf of each registered provider (whether by another registered provider or by an external provider).
- (2) The duty in subsection (1) applies to the assessment of higher education relating to the provider's category of registration.
- (3) The Commission may assess, or make arrangements for the assessment of, the quality of higher education provided in Wales by any tertiary education provider.
- (4) The Commission must publish a report of each assessment carried out under this section.
- (5) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations—
 - (a) require assessments under subsection (1) to be conducted at intervals specified in the regulations;
 - (b) require reports under subsection (4) to be published before the end of a period specified in the regulations.
- (6) Before making regulations under subsection (5), the Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission.
- (7) In this Part, references to an external provider are references to a person who—
 - (a) is not a registered provider, but
 - (b) is responsible for providing all or part of a course of higher education on behalf of a registered provider;and references to a governing body in relation to an external provider that is not an institution are references to the persons responsible for the provider's management.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (8) For the purposes of subsection (7)(b), the Welsh Ministers may make provision by regulations about the circumstances in which a person is (or is not) to be treated as responsible for providing a course (or part of it).

Commencement Information

- I115** S. 54 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I116 S. 54 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(aa\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

55 Action plans following assessments under section 54

- (1) This section applies to assessments conducted under section 54(1)(a) and (b) and published in accordance with section 54(4).
- (2) The governing body of a registered provider that provides the higher education assessed, or on behalf of which the higher education is provided (as the case may be), must—
- (a) prepare a written statement of the action it proposes to take in the light of the report and the period within which it proposes to take it;
 - (b) send the statement to the Commission and, if the assessment was conducted by a designated body, the designated body.
- (3) The governing body making the statement must publish it.
- (4) Compliance with the duties under subsections (2) and (3) is to be treated as an ongoing registration condition that applies to the registered provider for the purposes of section 39 (directions in respect of failure to comply with ongoing registration conditions) and section 41 (de-registration).

Commencement Information

- I117** S. 55 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

56 Exercise of higher education assessment functions by a designated body

- (1) Schedule 3 makes provision—
- (a) about the designation of a body to exercise the assessment functions;
 - (b) about oversight of the designated body by the Commission;
 - (c) for the body to charge fees.
- (2) For the purposes of this Chapter, “the assessment functions” are the functions of the Commission under section 54 (assessing the quality of higher education).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Where a body has been designated under Schedule 3 to exercise the assessment functions, the functions under section 54 do not cease to be exercisable by the Commission.

Commencement Information

I118 S. 56 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Inspection of further education or training etc.

57 Duty of the Chief Inspector to inspect and report

- (1) The Chief Inspector must inspect—
- (a) further education or training funded or otherwise secured by the Commission;
 - (b) further education or training funded or otherwise secured by the Welsh Ministers;
 - (c) further education or training funded by a local authority;
 - (d) further education or training where the Commission or a local authority is contemplating giving funding to the provider of the further education or training;
 - (e) education or training provided for persons of compulsory school age by a tertiary education provider in Wales that is an institution within the further education sector or the higher education sector;
 - (f) education or training provided in Wales and specified by the Welsh Ministers in regulations (if any).
- (2) Paragraphs (a), (b) and (c) of subsection (1) do not apply to—
- (a) education of a kind that may or must be inspected under Part 1 of the [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#) (school inspections), or
 - (b) if the funding mentioned in those paragraphs is given for a specific purpose, education or training at which that support is not directed.
- (3) The Chief Inspector must publish a report of each inspection carried out under this section including views on—
- (a) the quality of the education or training inspected,
 - (b) the standards achieved by those receiving that education or training, and
 - (c) whether the financial resources made available to the provider of the education or training are managed efficiently and used in a way which provides value for money.
- (4) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations,—
- (a) require inspections under subsection (1) (except paragraph (d)) to be conducted at intervals specified in the regulations;
 - (b) require reports under subsection (3) to be made before the end of a period specified in the regulations.
- (5) Before making regulations under this section the Welsh Ministers must consult—
- (a) the Commission;
 - (b) the Chief Inspector.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: *Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Commencement Information

- I119** S. 57 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I120 S. 57 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(bb\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

58 Power of the Chief Inspector to inspect and report

- (1) The Chief Inspector may inspect, and report on, any education or training described in section 57(1).
- (2) The Chief Inspector may inspect, and report on, any education or training—
 - (a) which is not of a kind described in section 57(1), but
 - (b) which could be funded in one of the ways mentioned in that section, if the provider of the education or training asks the Chief Inspector to do so.
- (3) The Chief Inspector may charge for the cost of an inspection conducted under subsection (2).
- (4) Subsections (3) to (5) of section 57 apply to a report under subsection (1) as they apply to a report under that section.
- (5) The Chief Inspector may arrange for a report of an inspection carried out as a result of a request under subsection (2) to be published.

Commencement Information

- I121** S. 58 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

59 Duty to provide information and advice to the Commission

- (1) This section applies in relation to education or training described in section 57(1) that is funded or otherwise secured by the Commission.
- (2) The Chief Inspector must keep the Commission informed about—
 - (a) the quality of the education or training to which this section applies,
 - (b) the standards achieved by those receiving that education or training, and
 - (c) whether the financial resources made available to those providing it are managed efficiently and used so as to provide value for money.
- (3) When asked to do so by the Commission, the Chief Inspector must—
 - (a) give the Commission advice on such matters, relating to education or training to which this section applies, as the Commission may specify;
 - (b) inspect such education or training, or such class of education or training, to which this section applies as the Commission may specify;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) report on the result of an inspection conducted under this section.

Commencement Information

I122 S. 59 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

60 Duty to provide information and advice to the Welsh Ministers

- (1) This section applies in relation to education and training described in section 57(1) that is not funded or otherwise secured by the Commission.
- (2) The Chief Inspector must keep the Welsh Ministers informed about—
- (a) the quality of the education or training to which this section applies,
 - (b) the standards achieved by those receiving that education or training, and
 - (c) whether the financial resources made available to those providing it are managed efficiently and used so as to provide value for money.
- (3) When asked to do so by the Welsh Ministers, the Chief Inspector must—
- (a) give the Welsh Ministers advice on such matters, relating to education or training to which this section applies, as the Welsh Ministers may specify;
 - (b) inspect such education or training, or such class of education or training, to which this section applies as the Welsh Ministers may specify;
 - (c) report on the result of an inspection conducted under this section.

Commencement Information

I123 S. 60 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

61 Additional functions of the Chief Inspector

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, confer other functions on the Chief Inspector in connection with the education or training described in section 57(1).
- (2) The functions conferred by the regulations may (among other things) include functions with respect to training of or for teachers, lecturers, trainers or other persons engaged in the provision of such education or training.

Commencement Information

I124 S. 61 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PROSPECTIVE

62 Action plans following inspections by the Chief Inspector

- (1) This section applies if the Chief Inspector publishes a report of an inspection.
- (2) But it does not apply to a report of an inspection conducted—
 - (a) as a result of a request under section 58(2), or
 - (b) under section 63.
- (3) The person responsible for the management of the provider of the education or training which is the subject of the report must prepare a written statement of the action which the person proposes to take in the light of the report and the period within which the person proposes to take it.
- (4) The person making the statement must publish it.
- (5) Subsection (6) applies if—
 - (a) a person subject to the duties in subsections (3) and (4) is the governing body of a registered provider, and
 - (b) the education or training which is the subject of the report relates to the provider’s category of registration.
- (6) Compliance with the duties in subsections (3) and (4) is to be treated as an ongoing registration condition that applies to the registered provider for the purposes of section 39 (directions in respect of failure to comply with ongoing registration conditions) and section 41 (de-registration).
- (7) Subsection (8) applies if the education or training which is the subject of the report is funded by the Commission or the Welsh Ministers under Part 3 of this Act.
- (8) Compliance with the duties in subsections (3) and (4) is to be treated as a requirement of the terms and conditions of funding under this Act.

Commencement Information

I125 S. 62 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

63 Area inspections

- (1) The Chief Inspector may inspect—
 - (a) the quality and availability of a description of education or training, in a specified area in Wales, for persons who are aged 15 or over,
 - (b) the standards achieved by those receiving that education or training, and
 - (c) whether the financial resources made available to those providing that education or training are managed efficiently and used in a way which provides value for money.
- (2) The Chief Inspector must carry out an inspection of the type described in subsection (1) (“an area inspection”) if requested to do so by—
 - (a) the Commission;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the Welsh Ministers.
- (3) The education or training that may be made the subject of an area inspection is any education or training described in section 57 or within the remit of the Chief Inspector as a result of any other enactment.
- (4) But the power to require the Chief Inspector to carry out an area inspection may only be exercised—
 - (a) in the case of the Commission, in respect of a description of education or training funded or otherwise secured by the Commission;
 - (b) in the case of the Welsh Ministers, in respect of a description of education or training other than education or training funded or otherwise secured by the Commission.
- (5) An area inspection may extend to considering—
 - (a) the manner in which any financial resources have been applied by a person described in subsection (6) in respect of the education or training inspected, and
 - (b) whether any such financial resources have been applied in a way which provides value for money.
- (6) The persons mentioned in subsection (5) are—
 - (a) the Commission;
 - (b) the Welsh Ministers;
 - (c) a local authority.
- (7) The following persons must provide such information as the Chief Inspector may reasonably require in connection with the inspection—
 - (a) persons responsible for the management of any provider of education or training which is the subject of an area inspection;
 - (b) any local authority within the area which is the subject of an area inspection;
 - (c) the Commission;
 - (d) the Welsh Ministers.
- (8) On completing an area inspection, the Chief Inspector must publish a report.
- (9) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations—
 - (a) make further provision with respect to the duty to provide information imposed by this section;
 - (b) require reports under subsection (8) to be published before the end of a period specified in the regulations.
- (10) For provision on reporting on sixth forms found to be causing concern in an area inspection, see sections 44C and 44E of the [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#).
- (11) In subsection (1)—
 - “persons who are aged 15” (“*personau sy’n 15 oed*”) includes persons for whom education is being provided at a school who will attain that age in the current school year;
 - “specified” (“*penodedig*”) means—
 - (a) in the case of an area inspection requested under subsection (2), specified in the request;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in the case of an area inspection carried out by the Chief Inspector other than by request, specified by the Chief Inspector.

Commencement Information

I126 S. 63 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I127 S. 63 in force at 1.11.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/1106, art. 2](#)

PROSPECTIVE

64 Right of entry and offences

- (1) When conducting an inspection under this Chapter, the Chief Inspector has, at all reasonable times—
 - (a) a right of entry to premises on which the education or training being inspected is provided;
 - (b) a right of entry to premises of the provider of that education or training which are used in connection with that provision;
 - (c) a right to inspect, and take copies of, any records kept by that person, and any other documents containing information relating to the education or training, which the inspector requires for the purposes of the inspection.
- (2) In respect of education or training provided by an employer in the workplace, the right of entry conferred by subsection (1) may be exercised only if the employer has been given reasonable notice.
- (3) The right to inspect conferred by subsection (1)(c) includes the right to have access to, and to inspect and check the operation of, any computer and any associated apparatus or material which is or has been in use in connection with the records or documents in question.
- (4) That right also includes the right to such assistance from—
 - (a) the person by whom or on whose behalf the computer is or has been so used, or
 - (b) any person having charge of, or otherwise concerned with the operation of, the computer, apparatus or material,
 as the Chief Inspector may reasonably require.
- (5) It is an offence wilfully to obstruct the Chief Inspector in the exercise of functions in relation to an inspection under this Chapter.
- (6) A person guilty of such an offence is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.
- (7) The powers conferred by this section do not include the power to enter a dwelling without the agreement of the occupier.
- (8) In this section, “premises” means premises in Wales or England.

Commencement Information

I128 S. 64 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

PROSPECTIVE

65 Surveys and studies

- (1) The Commission may direct the Chief Inspector to carry out—
 - (a) a survey of Wales, or of an area within Wales specified in the direction, in respect of matters specified in the direction relating to policy concerned with further education or training;
 - (b) a comparative study of the provision made outside Wales in respect of matters specified in the direction relating to further education or training.
- (2) The Chief Inspector may, without being directed to, carry out a survey or study of that kind.

Commencement Information

I129 S. 65 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

66 Annual reports

- (1) The annual report of the Chief Inspector required by section 21(1)(a) of the [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#) must include an account of the exercise of functions of the Chief Inspector under this Chapter.
- (2) The power conferred by that section to make other reports includes a power to make reports with respect to matters relating to education or training described in section 57(1).

Commencement Information

I130 S. 66 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

67 Annual plan of the Chief Inspector

- (1) The Chief Inspector must, for each financial year, prepare a plan setting out estimates of—
 - (a) the expenditure necessary, in the financial year to which the plan relates, in order to secure that the functions of the Chief Inspector are exercised effectively, and
 - (b) the income which the Chief Inspector will receive in that financial year and which may be applied towards meeting the expenses of the Chief Inspector.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The plan must contain proposals for the management of any funds which may be provided to the Chief Inspector in that financial year under—
 - (a) section 68 of this Act (funding by the Commission), and
 - (b) section 104(4) of the [Government of Wales Act 1998 \(c. 38\)](#) (funding by the Welsh Ministers).
- (3) The plan must be submitted, for the purposes of consultation, to—
 - (a) the Commission, and
 - (b) the Welsh Ministers,
 by such time before the beginning of the financial year to which it relates as they may jointly direct.
- (4) The Chief Inspector may publish the plan after it has been approved by—
 - (a) the Commission, and
 - (b) the Welsh Ministers.

Commencement Information

I131 S. 67 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

68 Funding of inspections and reports on further education and training etc.

- (1) The Commission must provide such funding to the Chief Inspector as it considers appropriate for the exercise of the Chief Inspector’s functions, so far as the functions relate to education or training that is funded or otherwise secured by the Commission.
- (2) In deciding what funding it considers appropriate, the Commission must have regard in particular to what the Commission considers the Chief Inspector needs to spend in order to exercise the functions.
- (3) Before the beginning of each financial year, the Commission must consult the Chief Inspector about the funding it is to provide to the Chief Inspector in that financial year.
- (4) The Commission must—
 - (a) approve such part (or parts) of the plan prepared by the Chief Inspector under section 67 as relate to functions in respect of which the Commission is required to provide funding under this section, and
 - (b) determine the amount of the funding it will provide under this section in accordance with the plan in so far as it is approved by the Commission.
- (5) But before it approves the plan under subsection (4) the Commission may require the Chief Inspector to modify the plan.
- (6) Section 104 of the [Government of Wales Act 1998 \(c. 38\)](#) is amended as follows—
 - (a) after subsection (1) insert—

“(1A) But the Welsh Ministers are not responsible for providing funding to the Chief Inspector for the discharge of the Chief Inspector’s functions under Chapter 2 of Part 2 of the Tertiary Education and

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Research (Wales) Act 2022 so far as they relate to education or training that is funded or otherwise secured by the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research.”;

(b) in subsection (4A), for paragraph (a) substitute—

“(a) approve such part (or parts) of the plan prepared by the Chief Inspector under section 67 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 as relate to functions in respect of which they are required to provide funding under this section, and”.

Commencement Information

I132 S. 68 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

CHAPTER 3

FURTHER ENFORCEMENT AND PROCEDURAL PROVISIONS

Intervention in the conduct of further education institutions

69 Grounds for intervention

For the purposes of sections 70 and 71, the grounds for intervention in the conduct of a tertiary education provider in Wales that is an institution within the further education sector are as follows—

- (a) the provider’s affairs have been or are being mismanaged by its governing body;
- (b) the provider’s governing body has failed to comply with a duty under any enactment;
- (c) the provider’s governing body has acted or is proposing to act unreasonably in the exercise of its functions under any enactment;
- (d) the provider is performing significantly less well than it might in all the circumstances reasonably be expected to perform, or is failing or likely to fail to give an acceptable standard of education or training.

Commencement Information

I133 S. 69 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

70 Powers to intervene

- (1) If the Welsh Ministers are satisfied that one or more of the grounds for intervention exist in relation to a tertiary education provider in Wales that is an institution within the further education sector, the Welsh Ministers may give a direction to the provider’s governing body.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Before giving a direction under this section, the Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission.
- (3) A direction under this section may—
 - (a) contain provision that has effect to remove all or any of the members of the provider’s governing body;
 - (b) contain provision that has effect to appoint new members of that body if there are vacancies (however arising);
 - (c) specify steps that are (or are not) to be taken by the governing body for the purpose of dealing with the grounds of intervention.
- (4) A direction under subsection (3)(c) may (among other things) require the governing body—
 - (a) to exercise powers under section 5(2)(b) to (f) and (h) of the [Education \(Wales\) Measure 2011 \(nawm 7\)](#) to collaborate with such persons and on such terms as may be specified in the direction;
 - (b) to make a resolution under section 27A(1) of the [Further and Higher Education Act 1992 \(c. 13\)](#) (“the 1992 Act”) for the body to be dissolved on a date specified in the direction.
- (5) A governing body to which a direction such as is mentioned in subsection (4)(b) is given is to be taken for the purposes of section 27A(1) of the 1992 Act to have complied with section 27 of that Act before making the resolution required by the direction.
- (6) Directions may be given under this section despite any enactment making the exercise of a power or discharge of a duty contingent on a governing body’s opinion.
- (7) The Welsh Ministers may not direct a governing body under this section to dismiss a member of staff.
- (8) But subsection (7) does not prevent the Welsh Ministers, where they consider that it may be appropriate to dismiss a member of staff whom the governing body has power under the provider’s articles of government to dismiss, from giving the governing body such directions under this section as are necessary to secure that the procedures applicable to the consideration of the case for dismissal of that member of staff are given effect to in relation to that member of staff.
- (9) An appointment of a member of a governing body under this section has effect as if made in accordance with the instrument of government and articles of government of the provider concerned.

Commencement Information

I134 S. 70 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

71 Notification by the Commission of grounds for intervention

- (1) If the Commission is of the view that any one or more of the grounds for intervention exist in relation to a tertiary education provider in Wales that is an institution within the further education sector, the Commission must notify the Welsh Ministers of that view.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The Welsh Ministers must have regard to the Commission’s view in deciding whether to exercise the powers under section 70.

Commencement Information

I135 S. 71 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

72 Welsh Ministers’ statement on intervention powers

- (1) The Welsh Ministers must publish a statement setting out how they propose to exercise their powers under section 70.
- (2) The Welsh Ministers—
- (a) must keep the statement under review;
 - (b) may revise it.
- (3) Before publishing the statement or a revised statement, the Welsh Ministers must consult such persons as they consider appropriate.
- (4) As soon as possible after publishing the statement or revised statement, the Welsh Ministers must lay a copy of it before Senedd Cymru.

Commencement Information

I136 S. 72 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Access to information and facilities

73 Duty to co-operate

- (1) The governing body of an external provider must ensure that a person exercising a function by virtue of section 51, 53 or 54(1) is provided with such information, assistance and access to the external provider’s facilities, systems and equipment as the person reasonably requires for the purpose of exercising the function (including for the purpose of exercising any power under section 74).
- (2) The governing body of a provider of further education or training funded under section 97 must ensure that a person exercising a function by virtue of section 51 or 53 is provided with such information, assistance and access to the provider’s facilities, systems and equipment as the person reasonably requires for the purpose of exercising the function (including for the purpose of exercising any power under section 74).
- (3) In subsection (2)—
- “the governing body” (“*y corff llywodraethu*”) means the person responsible for the provider’s management;
 - “provider of further education or training” (“*darparwr addysg bellach neu hyfforddiant*”) does not include a registered provider.
- (4) If the Commission is satisfied that a governing body has failed to comply with subsection (1) or (2), it may direct it to take (or not to take) specified steps for the

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

purpose of securing the provision of information, assistance or access as described in subsection (1) or (2) (as appropriate).

(5) For procedural provision about a direction under subsection (4), see sections 75 to 78.

Commencement Information

I137 S. 73 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

74 Powers of entry and inspection

- (1) For the purpose of the exercise of a function by virtue of section 36, 38, 51, 53 or 54(1), an authorised person may—
 - (a) enter the premises of a registered provider;
 - (b) inspect, copy or take away documents found on the premises.
- (2) For the purpose of the exercise of a function by virtue of section 51, 53 or 54(1), an authorised person may—
 - (a) enter the premises of an external provider;
 - (b) inspect, copy or take away documents found on the premises.
- (3) In subsections (1)(b) and (2)(b), references to—
 - (a) documents include information recorded in any form;
 - (b) documents found on the premises include—
 - (i) documents stored on computers or electronic storage devices on the premises, and
 - (ii) documents stored elsewhere which can be accessed by computers on the premises.
- (4) The power conferred by subsections (1)(b) and (2)(b) includes power—
 - (a) to require a person to provide documents;
 - (b) to impose requirements as to how documents are provided (which may include requirements to provide legible copies of documents stored electronically);
 - (c) to inspect a computer or electronic storage device on which documents have been created or stored.
- (5) A power conferred by this section may be exercised only after giving reasonable notice to—
 - (a) the governing body of the registered provider or external provider in relation to whose premises the authorised person intends to exercise the power, and
 - (b) the governing body of any registered provider on whose behalf that provider or external provider provides the tertiary education to which the exercise of the relevant function mentioned in subsection (1) or (2) relates.
- (6) Subsection (5) does not apply to the exercise of a power if the authorised person is satisfied that—
 - (a) the case is one of urgency, or
 - (b) complying with that subsection would defeat the object of exercising the power.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (7) In this section, “authorised person” means a person authorised in writing by the Commission (whether generally or specifically) to exercise the powers conferred by this section.
- (8) Before exercising a power under this section, an authorised person must, if required to do so, produce a copy of the person’s authorisation under subsection (7).
- (9) The powers conferred by this section—
- (a) may be exercised at reasonable times only;
 - (b) may not be exercised to require a person to do anything otherwise than at a reasonable time.
- (10) The powers conferred by this section do not include power to enter a dwelling without the agreement of the occupier.
- (11) In this section, “premises” means premises in Wales or England.

Commencement Information

I138 S. 74 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Warning and review procedure

75 Application of sections 76 to 78

- (1) Sections 76 to 78 apply to—
- (a) a direction under section 39 (directions in respect of failure to comply with ongoing registration conditions);
 - (b) notice under section 47(2)(b) (rejection of proposed fee limit statement);
 - (c) notice under section 47(4)(b) (rejection of proposed variation or replacement of a fee limit statement);
 - (d) a direction under section 73(4) (directions in respect of failure to co-operate).
- (2) But those sections do not apply to a direction that provides only for the revocation of an earlier direction.

Commencement Information

I139 S. 75 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

76 Proposed notices and directions: requirement to give warning notice

- (1) Before giving a governing body a notice or direction to which this section applies, the Commission must give the governing body a warning notice.
- (2) The warning notice must—
- (a) set out the proposed notice or direction,
 - (b) state the reasons for proposing to give it,
 - (c) specify the period during which the governing body may make representations about the proposed notice or direction (“the specified period”), and

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) specify the way in which those representations may be made.
- (3) The specified period must not be less than 28 days beginning with the date on which the notice is received.
- (4) The Commission must have regard to any representation made by the governing body in accordance with the warning notice in deciding whether to give the notice or direction.
- (5) Having decided whether to give the notice or direction, the Commission must notify the governing body of its decision.

Commencement Information

I140 S. 76 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

77 Information to be given with notices and directions and effect pending review

- (1) If the Commission gives a governing body a notice or direction to which this section applies, the notice or direction must specify the date on which it takes effect.
- (2) The Commission must, at the same time it gives the notice or direction, give the governing body a statement specifying—
 - (a) the reasons for giving the notice or direction,
 - (b) information as to the right of review, and
 - (c) the period specified in regulations under section 79(4)(c) within which an application for review may be made.
- (3) A notice or direction to which this section applies may not take effect at any time when—
 - (a) an application for review under section 78 could be brought in respect of the notice or direction, or
 - (b) a review or a decision by the Commission following such a review is pending.
- (4) But that does not prevent a notice or direction taking effect if the governing body notifies the Commission that it does not intend to apply for a review.
- (5) Where subsection (3) ceases to prevent a notice or direction taking effect on the date specified under subsection (1), the Commission must determine a future date on which the notice or direction takes effect.
- (6) But that is subject to what has been determined by the Commission following any review under section 78 in respect of the notice or direction.

Commencement Information

I141 S. 77 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

78 Review of notices and directions

If the Commission gives a governing body a notice or direction to which this section applies, the governing body may apply for a review of the notice or direction by the decision reviewer.

Commencement Information

I142 S. 78 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

79 Decision reviewer

- (1) The Welsh Ministers must appoint a person, or a panel of persons, to review decisions under sections 45 and 78.
- (2) The Welsh Ministers may pay remuneration and allowances to persons appointed under subsection (1).
- (3) The Welsh Ministers must, by regulations, make provision in connection with reviews by the decision reviewer under sections 45 and 78.
- (4) The regulations may, among other things, make provision—
 - (a) about the grounds on which the decision reviewer may make recommendations to the Commission;
 - (b) about the kinds of recommendation that may be made by the decision reviewer to the Commission;
 - (c) about the period within which, and the way in which, an application must be made;
 - (d) about the procedure to be followed by the decision reviewer;
 - (e) about steps to be taken by the Commission or the Welsh Ministers following a review.
- (5) In this Part, “the decision reviewer” means the person or panel of persons appointed under subsection (1).

Commencement Information

I143 S. 79 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Miscellaneous duties

80 Duty to monitor and report on financial sustainability

- (1) The Commission must monitor the financial sustainability of—
 - (a) registered providers;
 - (b) tertiary education providers in Wales that—
 - (i) are institutions within the further education sector,
 - (ii) are funded by the Commission under section 97, and
 - (iii) are not registered providers;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) other tertiary education providers of a kind specified in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.
- (2) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, provide for exceptions to subsection (1)(a) and (b).
- (3) The Commission must include in its annual report information about the financial position of the persons monitored under subsection (1) for the financial year to which the annual report relates.
- (4) At the same time the Commission sends its annual report to the Welsh Ministers, the Commission must send a separate report to the Welsh Ministers containing a summary of the financial outlook for the persons monitored under subsection (1) for the financial years following the financial year to which the annual report relates.
- (5) “A summary of the financial outlook” is a summary of conclusions drawn by the Commission, from its monitoring under subsection (1), regarding relevant patterns, trends or other matters which it has identified.
- (6) Patterns, trends or other matters are “relevant” if—
 - (a) they relate to the financial sustainability of some or all of the persons monitored under subsection (1), and
 - (b) the Commission considers that they are appropriate to be brought to the attention of the Welsh Ministers.
- (7) In this section—
 - “annual report” (“*adroddiad blynyddol*”) means the annual report under paragraph 16 of Schedule 1;
 - “financial year” (“*blwyddyn ariannol*”) has the same meaning as in that Schedule (see paragraph 17).

Commencement Information

I144 S. 80 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

81 Commission’s statement on intervention functions

- (1) The Commission must publish a statement setting out how it proposes to exercise its intervention functions.
- (2) The Commission—
 - (a) must keep the statement under review;
 - (b) may revise it.
- (3) Before publishing the statement or a revised statement, the Commission must consult—
 - (a) the governing body of each registered provider, and
 - (b) any other persons it considers appropriate.
- (4) The Commission’s intervention functions are its functions under the following provisions—
 - (a) section 36 (duty to monitor compliance with ongoing registration conditions);

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) section 37 (advice and assistance in respect of compliance with ongoing registration conditions);
- (c) section 38 (reviews relevant to compliance with conditions);
- (d) section 39 (directions in respect of failure to comply with ongoing registration conditions);
- (e) section 41 (de-registration);
- (f) section 51 (duty to monitor, and promote improvement in, the quality of regulated tertiary education);
- (g) section 52 (advice and assistance in respect of quality of tertiary education);
- (h) section 53 (reviews relevant to quality of tertiary education);
- (i) section 73(4) (directions in respect of failure to comply with a duty to co-operate).

Commencement Information

I145 S. 81 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Directions

82 Effect and enforcement of directions

- (1) If the Commission or the Welsh Ministers give a governing body a direction under this Part, the governing body must comply with the direction.
- (2) The direction is enforceable by injunction on the application of the person who gave the direction.
- (3) If requested to do so by the governing body, the person who gave the direction must give notice to the governing body stating whether the person is satisfied that it has complied with the direction (or with a particular requirement of the direction).
- (4) A direction given under this Part must be in writing.

Commencement Information

I146 S. 82 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

CHAPTER 4

GENERAL

83 Designation of other providers of tertiary education

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may, on the application of a provider of tertiary education within subsection (2), designate the provider for the purposes of this section.
- (2) A provider of tertiary education within this subsection is one that—
 - (a) provides tertiary education in Wales, but

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) would not (but for the designation) be regarded as an institution for the purposes of this Act.
- (3) A provider of tertiary education designated under this section is, unless the designation is withdrawn, to be treated for the purposes of any provision made by or under this Act as being an institution.
- (4) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, make provision about—
 - (a) the making of applications for designation;
 - (b) the making of designations under this section (including provision about matters to be taken into account in determining whether to make a designation);
 - (c) the withdrawal of a designation (including provision about matters to be taken into account in determining whether to withdraw a designation);
 - (d) the effect of a withdrawal of a designation (including provision for a provider whose designation is withdrawn to continue to be treated as an institution for prescribed purposes despite subsection (3)).

Commencement Information

I147 S. 83 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I148 S. 83 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(cc\)](#)

84 Interpretation of Part 2

In this Part—

“academic year” (*“blwyddyn academaidd”*) means a period of 12 months;

“applicable fee limit” (*“terfyn ffioedd cymwys”*) has the meaning given by section 32(8);

“Chief Inspector” (*“Prif Arolygydd”*) means Her Majesty’s Chief Inspector of Education and Training in Wales;

“decision reviewer” (*“adolygydd penderfyniadau”*) has the meaning given by section 79(5);

“excess fees” (*“ffioedd uwchlaw’r terfyn”*) has the meaning given by section 39(7);

“external provider” (*“darparwr allanol”*) has the meaning given by section 54(7);

“fee limit” (*“terfyn ffioedd”*) has the meaning given by section 46(5);

“fee limit condition” (*“amod terfyn ffioedd”*) has the meaning given by section 32(3);

“fee limit statement” (*“datganiad terfyn ffioedd”*) has the meaning given by section 46(1);

“fees” (*“ffioedd”*) means fees in respect of, or otherwise in connection with, undertaking a course, including admission, registration, tuition and graduation fees, and fees payable to a tertiary education provider for awarding or accrediting any part of the course, but excluding—

- (a) fees payable for board or lodging;
- (b) fees payable for field trips (including any tuition element of such fees);
- (c) fees payable for attending any graduation or other ceremony;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) any other fees specified in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers for the purposes of this definition;
- “governing body” (“*corff llywodraethu*”), in relation to an external provider that is not an institution, has the meaning given by section 54(7) (see section 144 for the meaning of “governing body” generally);
- “ongoing registration condition” (“*amod cofrestru parhaus*”) has the meaning given by section 25(10);
- “qualifying course” (“*cwrs cymhwysol*”) means a course specified in regulations under section 32(4);
- “qualifying person” (“*person cymhwysol*”) has the meaning given by section 32(9);
- “regulated course fees” (“*ffioedd cwrs rheoleiddiedig*”) has the meaning given by section 32(7);
- “relevant academic year” (“*blwyddyn academaidd berthnasol*”), in relation to a tertiary education provider to which a fee limit statement relates, has the meaning given in section 46(5).

Commencement Information

I149 S. 84 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I150 S. 84 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(dd\)](#)

PART 3

SECURING AND FUNDING TERTIARY EDUCATION AND RESEARCH

Funding the Commission

85 Power of the Welsh Ministers to fund the Commission

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may provide such funding to the Commission as they consider appropriate for the exercise of the Commission’s functions.
- (2) The Welsh Ministers may make funding under subsection (1) subject to terms and conditions which may (among other things)—
- (a) enable the Welsh Ministers to require the repayment, in whole or in part, of sums paid by them if any of the terms and conditions subject to which the sums were paid is not complied with;
 - (b) require the payment of interest in respect of any period during which a sum due to the Welsh Ministers in accordance with any of the terms and conditions remains unpaid;
 - (c) enable the Welsh Ministers to require the Commission to enter into an outcome agreement with a person to whom the Commission proposes to provide financial resources.
- (3) In subsection (2)(c), “an outcome agreement” means an agreement between—
- (a) the Commission, and
 - (b) the person to whom the Commission proposes to provide financial resources,

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

that sets out the activities to be carried out by that person for the purposes of contributing to the implementation of the Commission’s strategic plan approved under section 15.

- (4) An outcome agreement may be required under subsection (2)(c)—
- (a) in all cases where the Commission proposes to provide financial resources;
 - (b) in all cases where the Commission proposes to provide financial resources subject to specified exceptions;
 - (c) in those cases where the Commission proposes to provide financial resources to specified persons or to persons of a specified description;
 - (d) in those cases where the Commission proposes to provide financial resources for specified purposes or for purposes of a specified description;
 - (e) in those cases where the Commission proposes to provide financial resources above or below a specified amount.
- (5) In subsection (4), “specified” means specified in the terms and conditions.

Commencement Information

- I151** S. 85 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I152 S. 85(1)(2)(a)(b) in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(n\)](#)
I153 S. 85(2)(c)(3)-(5) in force at 1.4.2024 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 4\(c\)](#)

86 Funding the Commission: limitations on terms and conditions

- (1) Terms and conditions under section 85 relating to the provision of financial resources by the Commission to a person under section 88 or 89 (higher education), section 97 (further education or training) or section 105 (research and innovation) must not relate to activities carried on by a particular person unless they impose requirements that must be complied with—
- (a) in respect of every person, or every person of a specified class or description, and
 - (b) before financial resources of a specified amount or specified description are provided by the Commission in respect of activities carried on by a person.
- (2) In subsection (1), “specified” means specified in the terms and conditions.
- (3) Terms and conditions under section 85 relating to the provision of financial resources by the Commission must not be framed by reference to—
- (a) the criteria for the selection, appointment or dismissal of academic staff, and how they are applied, or
 - (b) the criteria for the admission of students, or how they are applied.
- (4) Terms and conditions under section 85 relating to the provision of financial resources by the Commission under section 105 (research and innovation) may be framed by reference to an area of research or innovation but only if that area is specified in the Commission’s strategic plan approved under section 15.
- (5) Terms and conditions under section 85 relating to the provision of financial resources by the Commission under section 88 or 89 (higher education) may be framed by reference to a particular course of study, but must not require the Commission to

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

exercise a function in a way which prohibits or requires the provision of a particular course of study.

- (6) Terms and conditions under section 85 relating to the provision of financial resources by the Commission under section 88 or 89 (higher education) or section 105 (research and innovation) must not be framed by reference to—
- (a) particular parts of courses of study;
 - (b) particular programmes of research or innovation projects;
 - (c) the content of courses of study, programmes of research or innovation projects;
 - (d) the manner in which such courses, programmes or projects are taught, supervised or assessed.
- (7) Subsections (5) and (6) do not prevent terms and conditions being framed by reference to courses of study or parts of courses of study being provided and assessed through the medium of Welsh.

Commencement Information

I154 S. 86 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I155 S. 86(1)(5)(6) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 6\(1\)](#) (with [arts. 6\(2\), 28](#))

I156 S. 86(2)(3)(7) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(d\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

I157 S. 86(4) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 7\(1\)](#) (with [arts. 7\(2\), 28](#))

Commission's funding policy

87 Policy on funding powers

- (1) The Commission must publish a statement of its policy on how it intends to exercise its funding powers.
- (2) In preparing the statement, the Commission must have regard to the principle that decisions about the provision or securing of financial resources should be made in a way that is transparent.
- (3) The Commission must keep the statement under review and may revise it.
- (4) Before publishing the statement or a revised statement, the Commission must consult such persons as it considers appropriate.
- (5) The Commission's funding powers are its powers to provide or secure financial resources under sections 88, 89, 97, 101, 103, 104 and 105.

Commencement Information

I158 S. 87 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I159 S. 87(1)(5) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(ee\)](#)

I160 S. 87(2) in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(o\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Funding of higher education

88 Financial support to specified providers for higher education

- (1) The Commission may provide financial resources to the governing body of a specified provider in respect of expenditure incurred, or to be incurred, by the governing body or by a collaborating body for the purposes of—
 - (a) the provision of higher education by, or on behalf of, the specified provider;
 - (b) the provision of facilities, and the carrying on of other activities, by or on behalf of the specified provider which its governing body considers it necessary or desirable to provide or carry on for the purposes of or in connection with higher education it provides or has provided on its behalf.
- (2) The Commission may also provide financial resources to any person in respect of expenditure incurred, or to be incurred, by the person for the purpose of the provision by any person of services for the purposes of, or in connection with, the provision of higher education by, or on behalf of, a specified provider.
- (3) In this section—

“collaborating body” (“*corff sy’n cydlafurio*”), in relation to a specified provider, means a person—

 - (a) to whom the governing body of the specified provider proposes to pay all or some of the financial resources provided to it under subsection (1), and
 - (b) who is providing, is proposing to provide or has provided higher education on behalf of the specified provider, or who is working, is proposing to work or has worked in collaboration with the provider for the purpose for which the financial resources are provided;

“specified provider” (“*darparwr penodedig*”) means a registered provider registered in a category specified for the purposes of this section in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.
- (4) The Commission must give its consent before the governing body of the specified provider makes a payment to a collaborating body (see section 109 for further provision about the Commission’s consent).
- (5) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, provide that financial resources may not be provided under this section in respect of expenditure incurred or to be incurred by a person for the purposes of the provision of a course of initial teacher training unless the course satisfies requirements set out in the regulations.

Commencement Information

I161 S. 88 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I162 S. 88 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(ff\)](#)

89 Financial support for higher education courses specified in regulations

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, specify a particular course of higher education or description of course of higher education for the purposes of this section (“an eligible course”).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) may describe a course by reference to (among other things)—
 - (a) requirements to be met by the course;
 - (b) the description of person providing the course;
 - (c) the qualification to which the course leads.
- (3) The Commission may provide financial resources to a person (“a provider”) in respect of expenditure incurred, or to be incurred, by the provider or by a collaborating body for the purpose of—
 - (a) the provision of an eligible course wholly or mainly in Wales;
 - (b) the provision of an eligible course to persons who are ordinarily resident in Wales.
- (4) In subsection (3), “collaborating body”, in relation to a provider, means a person—
 - (a) to whom the provider proposes to pay all or some of the financial resources provided to it under subsection (3), and
 - (b) who is providing, is proposing to provide or has provided an eligible course (or part of such a course) on behalf of the provider, or who is working, is proposing to work or has worked in collaboration with the provider for the purpose for which the financial resources are provided.
- (5) The Commission must give its consent before the provider makes a payment to a collaborating body (see section 109 for further provision about the Commission’s consent).

Commencement Information

I163 S. 89 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I164 [S. 89\(1\)\(2\)](#) in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(p\)](#)

I165 [S. 89\(3\)-\(5\)](#) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(gg\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

90 Financial support under sections 88 and 89: terms and conditions

- (1) Financial resources may be provided by the Commission under section 88 or 89 on the terms and conditions that the Commission considers appropriate.
- (2) The terms and conditions may (among other things)—
 - (a) enable the Commission to require the repayment, in whole or in part, of sums paid by it if any of the terms and conditions subject to which the sums were paid is not complied with;
 - (b) require the payment of interest in respect of any period during which a sum due to the Commission in accordance with any of the terms and conditions remains unpaid.
- (3) The terms and conditions must not relate to the application of any sums derived otherwise than from the Commission.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) The terms and conditions in relation to financial resources provided under section 89(3)(a) to a person who is not a registered provider, must include a requirement that the person—
- (a) if given notice under section 126(1), has in place a learner protection plan approved by the Commission (under section 126(3) or (5)) on or before the date specified in the terms and conditions, and gives effect to the plan,
 - (b) if the person is a tertiary education provider in Wales, complies with the requirements contained in the Learner Engagement Code published under section 129(1) or any revised code published under section 129(3), and
 - (c) has regard to advice or guidance given by the Commission to the person (either specifically or to persons generally) in exercise of the Commission’s functions in this Act.

Commencement Information

I166 S. 90 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

91 Financial support under sections 88 and 89: supplementary

- (1) In exercising its functions under section 88 or 89 to provide financial resources to a person, the Commission must have regard to the desirability of not discouraging that person from maintaining or developing funding from other sources.
- (2) In exercising its functions under section 88 or 89 to provide financial resources to a person, the Commission must have regard (so far as it considers it appropriate to do so in the light of any other relevant considerations) to the desirability of maintaining any distinctive characteristics of any tertiary education provider for whose activities financial resources are provided.

Commencement Information

I167 S. 91 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

92 Financial support by Welsh Ministers for certain higher education courses

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may secure the provision of financial resources to a person (“a provider”) in respect of expenditure incurred, or to be incurred, by the provider or by a collaborating body for the purpose of—
 - (a) the provision of a relevant higher education course wholly or mainly in Wales;
 - (b) the provision of a relevant higher education course to persons who are ordinarily resident in Wales.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The Welsh Ministers may secure the provision of financial resources under subsection (1)—
- (a) by providing resources themselves;
 - (b) by making arrangements for the provision of resources by another person;
 - (c) by making arrangements for the provision of resources by persons jointly (whether or not including the Welsh Ministers).
- (3) If the Welsh Ministers themselves provide financial resources under this section, they may impose such terms and conditions as they consider appropriate.
- (4) The terms and conditions may (among other things)—
- (a) enable the Welsh Ministers to require the repayment, in whole or in part, of sums paid by them if any of the terms and conditions subject to which the sums were paid is not complied with;
 - (b) require the payment of interest in respect of any period during which a sum due to the Welsh Ministers in accordance with any of the terms and conditions remains unpaid.
- (5) In this section—
- “collaborating body” (*“corff sy’n cydlafurio”*), in relation to a provider, means a person—
- (a) to whom the provider proposes to pay, with the consent of the Welsh Ministers, all or some of the financial resources provided to it under subsection (1), and
 - (b) who is providing, is proposing to provide or has provided a relevant higher education course (or part of such a course) on behalf of the provider, or who is working, is proposing to work or has worked in collaboration with the provider for the purpose for which the financial resources are provided;
- “relevant higher education course” (*“cwrw addysg uwch perthnasol”*) means a course within paragraph 1(g) or (h) of Schedule 6 to the [Education Reform Act 1988 \(c. 40\)](#) (courses in preparation for professional examinations at a higher level or providing education at a higher level).

Commencement Information

I168 S. 92 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Further education and training

PROSPECTIVE

93 Education and training for persons aged 16 to 19

- (1) The Commission must secure the provision of proper facilities for Wales for—
- (a) further education suitable to the requirements of persons who are over compulsory school age but have not attained the age of 19, and
 - (b) training suitable to the requirements of such persons.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Facilities are proper if they are—
- (a) of a quantity sufficient to meet the reasonable needs of individuals,
 - (b) of a quality adequate to meet those needs, and
 - (c) sufficient to satisfy the entitlements conferred under section 33F of the [Learning and Skills Act 2000 \(c. 21\)](#).

Commencement Information

I169 S. 93 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

94 Education and training for eligible persons over 19

- (1) The Commission must secure the provision of proper facilities for Wales for relevant education and training for eligible persons that is suitable to their requirements.
- (2) Facilities are proper if they are—
 - (a) of a quantity sufficient to meet the reasonable needs of individuals, and
 - (b) of a quality adequate to meet those needs.
- (3) The Welsh Ministers must, by regulations, specify as relevant education and training for the purpose of subsection (1) a description of further education or training.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (3) may describe further education or training by reference to (among other things)—
 - (a) subject;
 - (b) level of study, including by reference to—
 - (i) the level of attainment which, in the opinion of the Welsh Ministers, is demonstrated by a qualification falling within level 1, 2 or 3 of the Credit and Qualifications Framework for Wales, or
 - (ii) another document specified in the regulations that sets out descriptions of levels of qualifications;
 - (c) type of qualification.
- (5) In subsection (4), "the Credit and Qualifications Framework for Wales" means the document with that title published by the Welsh Ministers (as updated from time to time) and which includes descriptions of levels of qualifications.
- (6) In forming an opinion for the purposes of subsection (4)(b)(i) and before specifying a document under subsection (4)(b)(ii), the Welsh Ministers may have regard, in particular, to advice or information relating to qualifications which is provided by Qualifications Wales.
- (7) An eligible person is a person who—
 - (a) has attained the age of 19, and
 - (b) falls within a description specified in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers (if any).
- (8) Regulations under subsection (7)(b)—
 - (a) may describe an eligible person by reference to (among other things)—
 - (i) age;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (ii) qualifications or other educational attainment;
- (iii) status;
- (iv) income;
- (b) may specify different descriptions of eligible person in relation to different descriptions of further education or training.

Commencement Information

I170 S. 94 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I171 S. 94 in force at 1.4.2024 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 5](#)

PROSPECTIVE

95 Education and training for persons over 19

- (1) The Commission must secure the provision of reasonable facilities for Wales for—
 - (a) further education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of 19, and
 - (b) training suitable to the requirements of such persons.
- (2) Facilities are reasonable if (taking account of the Commission’s resources) the facilities are of such a quantity and quality that the Commission can reasonably be expected to secure their provision.

Commencement Information

I172 S. 95 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

96 Requirements on Commission when securing further education and training

- (1) In discharging the duties imposed on it by sections 93 to 95, the Commission must—
 - (a) have regard to the places where facilities are provided, the character of facilities and the way they are equipped;
 - (b) have regard to the different abilities and aptitudes of different persons;
 - (c) have regard to the requirements of employers, employees and potential employees in relation to the education and training required in different sectors of employment;
 - (d) have regard to the education and training that is required in order to ensure that employees and potential employees are available who are able to deliver additional learning provision in Welsh;
 - (e) have regard to the education and training that is required in order to ensure that facilities are available for assessing through the medium of Welsh whether persons have additional learning needs;
 - (f) have regard to facilities whose provision the Commission thinks might reasonably be secured by other persons (including provision secured by local

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

authorities under Part 2 of the [Additional Learning Needs and Education Tribunal \(Wales\) Act 2018 \(anaw 2\)](#));

- (g) make the best use of the Commission’s resources and in particular avoid provision which might give rise to disproportionate expenditure.

- (2) Provision is not to be considered as giving rise to disproportionate expenditure only because that provision is more expensive than comparable provision.

Commencement Information

I173 S. 96 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

97 Financial support for further education or training

- (1) The Commission or the Welsh Ministers may secure the provision of financial resources to—
- (a) persons for the purpose of the provision or proposed provision by them or by a collaborating body (within the meaning given by subsection (3)) of further education or training wholly or mainly in Wales;
 - (b) persons for the purpose of the provision or proposed provision by them or by a collaborating body (within the meaning given by subsection (3)) of further education or training to persons who are ordinarily resident in Wales;
 - (c) persons for the purpose of the provision or proposed provision by them of goods or services in connection with the provision by them or others of further education or training wholly or mainly in Wales;
 - (d) persons who are ordinarily resident in Wales and who are receiving or proposing to receive further education or training;
 - (e) persons who are not ordinarily resident in Wales and who are receiving or proposing to receive further education or training in Wales;
 - (f) tertiary education providers in Wales that are institutions within the further or higher education sector for the purpose of the provision or proposed provision by them of secondary education to persons of compulsory school age;
 - (g) persons carrying out means tests under arrangements made under section 100.
- (2) The Commission or the Welsh Ministers may secure the provision of financial resources under subsection (1)—
- (a) by providing resources itself or themselves;
 - (b) by making arrangements for the provision of resources by another person;
 - (c) by making arrangements for the provision of resources by persons jointly (whether or not including the Commission or the Welsh Ministers).
- (3) A person (“a provider”) may pay all or some of the financial resources provided to the provider under subsection (1)(a) or (b) to another person (“a collaborating body”) if subsection (4) applies.
- (4) This subsection applies if the collaborating body is providing, is proposing to provide or has provided further education or training on behalf of the provider, or is working, is proposing to work or has worked in collaboration with the provider for the purpose for which the financial resources are secured.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) The Commission (in the case of financial resources secured by it) or the Welsh Ministers (in the case of financial resources secured by them) must give their consent before the provider makes a payment to a collaborating body (see section 109 for further provision about the Commission’s consent).
- (6) The Commission may not provide its financial resources under subsection (1)(a) or (b), or make arrangements for a local authority to provide such resources under subsection (2)(b), to the governing body of a maintained school in Wales for the purpose of, or for a purpose connected with, the provision by the school of education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age (for provision as to the funding of school sixth-forms, see section 101).
- (7) But the Commission may provide its financial resources under this subsection, or make arrangements for a local authority to provide such resources, to the governing body of a maintained school in Wales that provides education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age for the purpose of innovative activities.
- (8) An innovative activity is an activity that—
 - (a) in the Commission’s opinion will contribute to the raising of standards of tertiary education, and
 - (b) is described in a document prepared by the Commission and approved by the Welsh Ministers.

Commencement Information

1174 S. 97 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

1175 S. 97 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(hh\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

98 Financial support for further education or training: further provision

- (1) In exercising the power under section 97(1)(d) or (e), the Commission or the Welsh Ministers may secure the provision of financial resources by reference to any fees or charges payable by the person receiving or proposing to receive the education or training or to any other matter (such as transport or childcare).
- (2) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, provide that the provision of financial resources for specified purposes must only be secured under section 97(1)(a) or (b) to registered providers in specified categories.
- (3) Regulations under subsection (2) may provide for exceptions for specified courses of further education or training or specified descriptions of such courses; and a course may be described by reference to (among other things)—
 - (a) requirements to be met by the course;
 - (b) the description of person providing the course;
 - (c) the qualification to which the course leads.
- (4) In subsections (2) and (3), “specified” means specified in the regulations.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I176 S. 98 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

99 Financial resources for further education or training: terms and conditions

- (1) If the Commission itself, or the Welsh Ministers themselves, provide financial resources under section 97, they may impose such terms and conditions as they consider appropriate.
- (2) The terms and conditions may (among other things)—
 - (a) enable the Commission or the Welsh Ministers to require the repayment, in whole or in part, of sums paid by them if any of the terms and conditions subject to which the sums were paid is not complied with;
 - (b) require the payment of interest in respect of any period in which a sum due to the Commission or the Welsh Ministers in accordance with any of the terms and condition remains unpaid;
 - (c) require a person providing or proposing to provide education or training (“the provider”) to make arrangements providing for all or any of the following—
 - (i) for the provider to charge fees by reference to specified criteria;
 - (ii) for the provider to make awards by reference to specified criteria;
 - (iii) for the provider to recover amounts from persons receiving education or training or from employers (or from both);
 - (iv) for amounts to be determined by reference to specified criteria where provision is made under sub-paragraph (ii);
 - (v) for specified exemptions to operate where provision is made under sub-paragraph (iii).
- (3) In subsection (2), “specified” means specified in the terms and conditions.
- (4) The terms and conditions must prohibit a person providing, or proposing to provide, further education or training suitable to the requirements of persons who are over compulsory school age but have not attained the age of 19 from charging persons of that age who are receiving the further education or training.
- (5) The terms and conditions must also prohibit a person providing, or proposing to provide, relevant education and training suitable to the requirements of eligible persons from charging eligible persons who are receiving that education or training; in this subsection “relevant education and training” and “eligible persons” have the same meaning as in section 94.
- (6) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, provide for exceptions to the requirement in subsection (4) or (5).
- (7) Terms and conditions imposed by the Commission in relation to financial resources provided under section 97(1)(a) to a person who is not a registered provider, must—
 - (a) require the person, if given notice under section 126(1), to have in place a learner protection plan approved by the Commission (under section 126(3) or

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5)) on or before the date specified in the terms and conditions, and to give effect to the plan;
 - (b) require the person, if the person is a tertiary education provider in Wales, to comply with the requirements contained in the Learner Engagement Code published under section 129(1) or any revised code published under section 129(3);
 - (c) require the person to have regard to advice or guidance given by the Commission (either specifically or to persons generally) in exercise of the Commission's functions in this Act.
- (8) If the Commission has made arrangements under section 97(2)(b) for another person to provide the Commission's financial resources, the Commission—
- (a) may require that person to provide the resources subject to such terms and conditions that the Commission considers appropriate (including terms and conditions of a kind that could be imposed under subsection (2)), and
 - (b) must require that person to provide the resources subject to the terms and conditions described in subsections (4) to (7).

Commencement Information

I177 S. 99 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

100 Means tests

- (1) The Commission or the Welsh Ministers may—
 - (a) carry out means tests;
 - (b) arrange for other persons to carry out means tests.
- (2) The Commission and the Welsh Ministers may take the results of means tests carried out under subsection (1) into account in exercising the power under section 97(1)(d) or (e).

Commencement Information

I178 S. 100 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

101 School sixth-forms

- (1) The Commission may make a grant to a local authority—
 - (a) on the condition that the grant be applied as part of the authority's schools budget for a funding period, and
 - (b) with a view to the grant being used for the purposes of, or for purposes connected with, the provision by schools of education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) A grant made under this section may be made on terms and conditions in addition to the condition mentioned in subsection (1)(a) (including terms and conditions of a kind which could be imposed under section 99(2)).
- (3) The governing body of a maintained school in Wales that provides education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age must comply with the requirements contained in the Learner Engagement Code published under section 129(1) or any revised code published under section 129(3).
- (4) The following must have regard to advice or guidance given by the Commission (either specifically or to persons generally) in exercise of the Commission’s functions in this Act—
 - (a) a local authority in receipt of a grant under this section, and
 - (b) the governing body of a maintained school in Wales that provides education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age.
- (5) In this section—

“funding period” (“*cyfnod cyllido*”) means a financial year or, if some other period is prescribed in relation to Wales under subsection (1B) of section 45 of the [School Standards and Framework Act 1998 \(c. 31\)](#) (maintained schools to have budget shares), that other period;

“schools budget” (“*cyllideb ysgolion*”) has the same meaning as in section 45A(2) of the [School Standards and Framework Act 1998](#) (determination of specified budgets of local authority).

Commencement Information

I179 S. 101 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I180 S. 101 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(ii\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

102 Persons with additional learning needs

- (1) In exercising its functions under the provisions set out in subsection (2), the Commission must have regard to—
 - (a) the needs of persons with additional learning needs;
 - (b) the desirability of facilities being available which would assist the discharge of duties under the [Additional Learning Needs and Education Tribunal \(Wales\) Act 2018 \(anaw 2\)](#).
- (2) The provisions are—
 - (a) section 93 (education and training for persons aged 16 to 19);
 - (b) section 94 (education and training for eligible persons over 19);
 - (c) section 95 (education and training for persons over 19);
 - (d) section 97(1)(a) to (e) and (7) (financial support for further education or training);
 - (e) section 103(1) (financial support for provision of information, advice, guidance and to form links with employers);

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (f) section 103(2) (financial support for Welsh medium education and teaching Welsh) except in so far as the provision of tertiary education and the teaching referred to in that subsection consists of higher education.

Commencement Information

I181 S. 102 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Financial support for other activities connected to tertiary education

103 Financial support for other activities connected to tertiary education

- (1) The Commission or the Welsh Ministers may secure the provision of financial resources for the purpose of, or in connection with—
 - (a) the provision or proposed provision of information, advice or guidance about relevant education or connected matters;
 - (b) the provision or proposed provision of information, advice or guidance to persons ordinarily resident in Wales about education or training outside Wales or connected matters;
 - (c) the provision or proposed provision of facilities designed to form links between (on the one hand) employers and (on the other) persons who provide or receive relevant education.
- (2) The Commission may secure the provision of financial resources for—
 - (a) the purpose of providing, through the medium of Welsh, relevant education that is tertiary education;
 - (b) the purpose of teaching Welsh by means of relevant education that is tertiary education;
 - (c) other purposes connected to those in paragraphs (a) and (b).
- (3) In subsections (1) and (2), “relevant education” means—
 - (a) Welsh tertiary education, or
 - (b) other education or training provided wholly or mainly in Wales or to persons who are ordinarily resident in Wales.
- (4) The Commission or the Welsh Ministers may secure the provision of financial resources under subsection (1), and the Commission may secure the provision of financial resources under subsection (2)—
 - (a) by providing resources itself or themselves;
 - (b) by making arrangements for the provision of resources by another person;
 - (c) by making arrangements for the provision of resources by persons jointly (whether or not including the Commission or the Welsh Ministers).
- (5) The Commission may not provide its financial resources under subsection (2), or make arrangements for a local authority to provide such resources under subsection (4)(b), to the governing body of a maintained school in Wales for the purpose of, or for a purpose connected with, the provision by the school of education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age (for provision as to the funding of school sixth-forms, see section 101).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) If the Commission itself, or the Welsh Ministers themselves, provide financial resources under subsection (1) or (2), they may impose such terms and conditions as they consider appropriate.
- (7) The terms and conditions may (among other things)—
- (a) enable the Commission or the Welsh Ministers to require the repayment, in whole or in part, of sums paid by them if any of the terms and conditions subject to which the sums were paid is not complied with;
 - (b) require the payment of interest in respect of any period in which a sum due to the Commission or the Welsh Ministers in accordance with any of the terms and condition remains unpaid.
- (8) If the Commission has made arrangements under subsection (4) for another person to provide the Commission’s financial resources, the Commission may require that person to provide the resources subject to such terms and conditions that the Commission considers appropriate (including terms and conditions of a kind that could be imposed under subsection (7)).

Commencement Information

I182 S. 103 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I183 S. 103 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919, art. 3\(jj\)](#)

Financial support for apprenticeships

104 Financial support for apprenticeships

- (1) The Commission may provide financial resources to a person in respect of expenditure incurred, or to be incurred—
- (a) by the person or by a collaborating body (within the meaning given by subsection (2)) for or in connection with the provision of an approved Welsh apprenticeship;
 - (b) by the person for or in connection with the preparation of an apprenticeship framework.
- (2) A person (“a provider”) may pay all or some of the financial resources provided to the provider under subsection (1)(a) to another person (“a collaborating body”) if subsection (3) applies.
- (3) This subsection applies if the collaborating body is providing, is proposing to provide or has provided an approved Welsh apprenticeship on behalf of the provider, or is working, is proposing to work, or has worked in collaboration with the provider for the purpose for which the financial resources are provided.
- (4) The Commission must give its consent before the provider makes a payment to a collaborating body (see section 109 for further provision about the Commission’s consent).
- (5) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, provide that the Commission must only provide financial resources under subsection (1)(a) to tertiary education providers registered in categories specified in the regulations.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) Regulations under subsection (5) may provide for exceptions to the requirement to be registered; and an exception may be framed by reference to (among other things)—
- (a) requirements to be met by an approved Welsh apprenticeship;
 - (b) the description of person providing an approved Welsh apprenticeship;
 - (c) qualifications which form part of an approved Welsh apprenticeship.
- (7) Financial resources may be provided by the Commission under this section on the terms and conditions that it considers appropriate.
- (8) The terms and conditions may (among other things)—
- (a) enable the Commission to require the repayment, in whole or in part, of sums paid by it if any of the terms and conditions subject to which the sums were paid is not complied with;
 - (b) require the payment of interest in respect of any period during which a sum due to the Commission in accordance with any of the terms and conditions remains unpaid.
- (9) Terms and conditions imposed by the Commission in relation to financial resources provided under subsection (1)(a) to a person who is not a registered provider, must—
- (a) require the person, if given notice under section 126(1), to have in place a learner protection plan approved by the Commission (under section 126(3) or (5)) on or before the date specified in the terms and conditions, and to give effect to the plan;
 - (b) require the person, if the person is a tertiary education provider in Wales, to comply with the requirements contained in the Learner Engagement Code published under section 129(1) or any revised code published under section 129(3);
 - (c) require the person to have regard to advice or guidance given by the Commission (either specifically or to persons generally) in exercise of the Commission’s functions in this Act.
- (10) When providing financial resources to a person under subsection (1)(a) the Commission must have regard—
- (a) to the desirability of not discouraging that person from maintaining or developing funding from other sources, and
 - (b) (so far as it considers it appropriate to do so in light of any other relevant considerations) to the desirability of maintaining any distinctive characteristics of any tertiary education provider for whose activities financial resources are provided.
- (11) In this section—
- “apprenticeship framework” (*“fframwaith prentisiaeth”*) has the meaning given by section 114;
- “approved Welsh apprenticeship” (*“prentisiaeth Gymreig gymeradwy”*) has the meaning given by section 111.

Commencement Information

I184 S. 104 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I185 S. 104 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(kk\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Research and innovation

105 Financial support for research and innovation

- (1) The Commission may provide financial resources to the governing body of a specified provider in respect of expenditure incurred, or to be incurred, by the governing body or by a collaborating body for the purposes of, or in connection with, research or innovation.
- (2) The Commission may also provide financial resources to any person in respect of expenditure incurred, or to be incurred, by the person for the purpose of the provision by any person of services for the purposes of, or in connection with, the carrying out of research or innovation by a specified provider.
- (3) In exercising its functions under this section to provide financial resources to a specified provider, the Commission must have regard—
 - (a) to the desirability of not discouraging that provider from maintaining or developing funding from other sources, and
 - (b) (so far as it considers it appropriate to do so in the light of any other relevant considerations) to the desirability of maintaining any distinctive characteristics of the provider.
- (4) In this section—

“collaborating body” (“*corff sy’n cydlafurio*”), in relation to a specified provider, means a person—

 - (a) to whom the governing body of the specified provider proposes to pay all or some of the financial resources provided to it under subsection (1), and
 - (b) who is carrying out, is proposing to carry out or has carried out research or innovation on behalf of the specified provider, or who is working, is proposing to work or has worked, in collaboration with the provider for the purpose for which the financial resources are provided;

“specified provider” (“*darparwr penodedig*”) means a registered provider registered in a category specified for the purposes of this section in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.
- (5) The Commission must give its consent before the governing body of the specified provider makes a payment to a collaborating body (see section 109 for further provision about the Commission’s consent).

Commencement Information

1186 S. 105 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

1187 S. 105 in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 3\(II\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

106 Financial support for research and innovation: terms and conditions

- (1) Financial resources may be provided by the Commission under section 105 on the terms and conditions that the Commission considers appropriate.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The terms and conditions may (among other things)—
- (a) enable the Commission to require the repayment, in whole or in part, of sums paid by it if any of the terms and conditions subject to which the sums were paid is not complied with;
 - (b) require the payment of interest in respect of any period during which a sum due to the Commission in accordance with any of the terms and conditions remains unpaid.
- (3) The terms and conditions must not relate to the application of any sums derived otherwise than from the Commission.
- (4) When—
- (a) deciding to provide financial resources under section 105, and
 - (b) determining any terms and conditions of financial resources provided under that section,
- the Commission must have regard to the principle that decisions on individual research or innovation proposals are best taken following an evaluation of the quality and likely impact of the proposals (such as a peer review process).

Commencement Information

I188 S. 106 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

107 The Commission's other functions in relation to research and innovation

- (1) The Commission must—
- (a) promote awareness and understanding in Wales of the research and innovation activities it funds;
 - (b) disseminate in Wales the results of the research and innovation activities it funds;
 - (c) facilitate the practical application in Wales of the results of research and innovation activities it funds.
- (2) The Commission must monitor how financial resources provided under section 105 are used.
- (3) The Commission must include in its annual report (prepared under paragraph 16 of Schedule 1) the conclusions it reaches from that monitoring as to the extent to which the activities it funds, for the financial year to which the report relates—
- (a) are achieving successful results,
 - (b) are being delivered effectively, and
 - (c) represent value for money.

Commencement Information

I189 S. 107 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
 Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

PROSPECTIVE

Terms and conditions: quality, governance etc., welfare and equal opportunities

108 Financial support under sections 89, 97 and 104: further provision about terms and conditions

(1) When determining the terms and conditions to be imposed in relation to financial resources provided under section 89(3), 97(1)(a) or (b) or 104(1)(a) to a provider who is not a registered provider, the Commission must consider whether to impose terms and conditions relating to—

- (a) the quality of the relevant education provided by or on behalf of the provider;
- (b) the effectiveness of the governance and management of the provider (including its financial management);
- (c) the financial sustainability of the provider;
- (d) the effectiveness of the provider’s arrangements for supporting and promoting the welfare of its students and staff;
- (e) the delivery of measurable outcomes to further each of the aims in subsection (2).

(2) The aims are—

- (a) increasing participation in relevant education provided by or on behalf of the provider by persons who are members of under-represented groups;
- (b) retention of students who are members of under-represented groups to the end of courses of relevant education provided by or on behalf of the provider;
- (c) reduction of any gaps of attainment in relevant education provided by or on behalf of the provider between different groups of students specified in the terms and conditions where the differences arise from social, cultural, economic or organisational factors;
- (d) provision of support for students finishing courses of relevant education provided by or on behalf of the provider who are members of under-represented groups to continue their tertiary education, find employment or start a business.

(3) In this section—

“relevant education” (*“addysg berthnasol”*) means—

- (a) where financial resources are provided under section 89(3)(a) or (b), the eligible course (within the meaning given by section 89(1)) in respect of which the resources are provided;
- (b) where financial resources are provided under section 97(1)(a) or (b), the further education or training in respect of which the resources are provided;
- (c) where financial resources are provided under section 104(1)(a), the approved Welsh apprenticeship (within the meaning given by section 111) in respect of which the resources are provided;

“under-represented groups” (*“grwpiau sydd heb gynrychiolaeth ddigonol”*) are groups specified in the terms and conditions that are under-represented in relevant education as a result of social, cultural, economic or organisational factors.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I190 S. 108 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

Collaborating bodies: consent

109 Consent for payments to collaborating bodies

- (1) The Commission may give consent for the purpose of section 88(4), 89(5), 97(5), 104(4) or 105(5) generally or in relation to a specific payment or a specific collaborating body.
- (2) The Commission may give consent for the purpose of any of those provisions subject to conditions.
- (3) The conditions must include a requirement that the person to whom financial resources are being provided or secured under section 88, 89, 97, 104 or 105 (as the case may be) makes arrangements for the purpose of ensuring that the resources paid to a collaborating body are managed efficiently and used in a way that provides value for money.
- (4) The Commission may withdraw, suspend or vary consent given for the purpose of any of those provisions, and where consent has been given generally, it may do so generally or in relation to a specific payment or a specific collaborating body.
- (5) Before withdrawing, varying or suspending consent, the Commission must give notice to the person to whom financial resources are being provided or secured under section 88, 89 97, 104 or 105 (as the case may be).
- (6) The notice must state—
 - (a) the reasons for proposing to withdraw, vary or suspend consent,
 - (b) the period during which representations about the proposed action may be made, and
 - (c) the way in which those representations may be made.
- (7) The Commission must have regard to any representations made in accordance with the notice in deciding whether to withdraw, vary or suspend consent.
- (8) The requirements in subsections (5) to (7) do not apply if the Commission is satisfied that it is necessary to withdraw, vary or suspend consent before it would be practicable to comply with those requirements.
- (9) The Commission must keep consent given for the purpose of section 88(4), 89(5), 97(5), 104(4) or 105(5) under review.

Commencement Information

I191 S. 109 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PROSPECTIVE

Financial support directions

110 Financial support directions

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may give the Commission financial support directions in relation to a relevant person.
- (2) Financial support directions may be given only if it appears to the Welsh Ministers that the financial affairs of the relevant person have been or are being mismanaged.
- (3) “Financial support directions” are such directions about the provision or securing of financial resources under section 88, 89, 97, 101, 103, 104 or 105 to a relevant person as the Welsh Ministers consider necessary or expedient because of the mismanagement.
- (4) In this section, “relevant person” means—
 - (a) a registered provider;
 - (b) a person (other than a registered provider or the governing body of a maintained school) in receipt of financial resources provided or secured by the Commission under section 88(2), 89, 97, 101, 103, 104 or 105(2).
- (5) Before giving a financial support direction, the Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission and the relevant person unless the Welsh Ministers are satisfied that—
 - (a) it is necessary to give the direction before it would be practicable to consult the Commission and the relevant person, or
 - (b) consultation would defeat the object of giving the direction.
- (6) If the Welsh Ministers give a financial support direction, they must—
 - (a) publish the direction,
 - (b) report to Senedd Cymru that a direction has been given and lay a copy of the direction before the Senedd, and
 - (c) keep the direction under review.
- (7) The Commission must comply with a financial support direction given under this section.

Commencement Information

1192 S. 110 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PROSPECTIVE

PART 4

APPRENTICESHIPS

Introductory

111 Meaning of “approved Welsh apprenticeship”

- (1) An approved Welsh apprenticeship is an arrangement that falls within subsections (2), (3) and (4).
- (2) The arrangement—
 - (a) takes place under an approved Welsh apprenticeship agreement, or
 - (b) is an alternative Welsh apprenticeship.
- (3) The work undertaken by virtue of the arrangement takes place wholly or mainly in Wales.
- (4) The arrangement satisfies any conditions specified in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.
- (5) This section applies for the purposes of this Part.

Commencement Information

I193 S. 111 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

112 Meaning of “approved Welsh apprenticeship agreement”

- (1) An approved Welsh apprenticeship agreement is an agreement which—
 - (a) provides for a person (“the apprentice”) to work for another person for reward in an occupation for which an apprenticeship framework published under section 117 is in force at the time the agreement is made,
 - (b) provides for the apprentice to receive training in order to assist the apprentice to meet the requirements specified in the apprenticeship framework, and
 - (c) satisfies any other conditions specified in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.
- (2) This section applies for the purposes of this Part.

Commencement Information

I194 S. 112 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

113 Meaning of “alternative Welsh apprenticeship”

- (1) An alternative Welsh apprenticeship is an arrangement, under which a person works, which is of a kind described in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) may, for example, describe arrangements which relate to cases where a person—
 - (a) works otherwise than for another person;
 - (b) works otherwise than for reward.
- (3) This section applies for the purposes of this Part.

Commencement Information

I195 S. 113 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

114 Meaning of “apprenticeship framework”

- (1) An apprenticeship framework is a document that specifies requirements for the completion of approved Welsh apprenticeships in an occupation or a group of occupations, which may include (but are not limited to) requirements relating to—
 - (a) standards of attainment;
 - (b) qualifications;
 - (c) the type or amount of training undertaken.
- (2) This section applies for the purposes of this Part.

Commencement Information

I196 S. 114 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Functions of the Welsh Ministers

115 Specification of requirements in relation to approved Welsh apprenticeship

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may specify requirements in relation to approved Welsh apprenticeships for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) A requirement may relate to the content of apprenticeship frameworks, including (but not limited to)—
 - (a) specification of the occupational sectors to which the occupation or group of occupations covered by an apprenticeship framework must relate;
 - (b) general standards of attainment needed for completion of approved Welsh apprenticeships;
 - (c) the type of qualifications needed for completion of approved Welsh apprenticeships;
 - (d) the type or amount of training needed for completion of approved Welsh apprenticeships.
- (3) A requirement may relate to the preparation, revision, withdrawal or publication of an apprenticeship framework, including (but not limited to)—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the way in which an apprenticeship framework is prepared, revised, withdrawn or published;
 - (b) the matters that must be taken into account in preparing, revising or withdrawing an apprenticeship framework.
- (4) A requirement may relate to approved Welsh apprenticeships generally or approved Welsh apprenticeships in one or more occupations.
- (5) The Welsh Ministers may—
- (a) revise or withdraw a requirement by further specification of a requirement;
 - (b) withdraw a requirement by publishing a notice of its withdrawal.
- (6) A requirement specified under this section (including a revision and a specification that includes a withdrawal) must be published.
- (7) A requirement specified under this section (including a revision) and the withdrawal of a requirement (whether by notice or further specification of a requirement) must state the date on which it comes into force.

Commencement Information

I197 S. 115 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

116 Consultation by Welsh Ministers about specifications

- (1) Before taking any action mentioned in subsection (2), the Welsh Ministers must consult—
- (a) the Commission, and
 - (b) such other persons as they consider appropriate.
- (2) The actions are—
- (a) specifying a requirement under section 115 (including revised requirements);
 - (b) withdrawing a requirement under section 115.

Commencement Information

I198 S. 116 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Functions of the Commission

117 Preparation and publication of apprenticeship frameworks

- (1) The Commission may prepare or secure the preparation of apprenticeship frameworks.
- (2) The Commission may publish apprenticeship frameworks prepared by itself or by other persons (whether or not the Commission secured their preparation).
- (3) An apprenticeship framework published under this section must comply with any requirements specified under section 115.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) An apprenticeship framework may specify requirements at different levels of attainment for the same occupation or group of occupations, either within the same apprenticeship framework or in separate frameworks.
- (5) An apprenticeship framework may include any material relevant to an approved Welsh apprenticeship in the occupation or group of occupations to which the framework relates or to approved Welsh apprenticeships generally.
- (6) The Commission must make arrangements to keep under review each published apprenticeship framework with a view to determining whether the framework ought to be revised or withdrawn.
- (7) The Commission may—
 - (a) publish a revised version of an apprenticeship framework, or
 - (b) withdraw an apprenticeship framework (with or without publishing another in its place).
- (8) An apprenticeship framework published under this section must state the date on which it comes into force.
- (9) References to an apprenticeship framework in this section include a revised framework.

Commencement Information

I199 S. 117 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

118 Register of apprenticeship frameworks

- (1) The Commission must maintain a register of the apprenticeship frameworks published under section 117.
- (2) In respect of each apprenticeship framework (including any revised framework), the register must include details of when it comes into force.
- (3) Where a revised framework is included in the register, the register must include a general description of the cases to which the revised framework applies.
- (4) Where an apprenticeship framework has been withdrawn, the register must include details of when the withdrawal comes into force and a general description of the cases to which the withdrawal applies.
- (5) The Commission must publish the register.
- (6) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, require the Commission to include other information in the register relating to approved Welsh apprenticeships.

Commencement Information

I200 S. 118 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

119 Power to issue apprenticeship certificates

- (1) The Commission may issue a certificate (“an apprenticeship certificate”) in respect of a person who applies for it, if it appears to the Commission that the person has completed an approved Welsh apprenticeship.
- (2) The Commission may, following an application, supply a copy of an apprenticeship certificate to a person in respect of whom the certificate was issued.
- (3) The Commission may determine—
 - (a) the way in which applications for certificates or copies of certificates must be made;
 - (b) the contents of certificates.
- (4) The Commission may charge a fee for issuing an apprenticeship certificate or supplying a copy of it only if, and to the extent that, the charging of the fee is authorised by regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.

Commencement Information

I201 S. 119 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

120 Delegation of Commission functions

- (1) The functions of the Commission under section 117(2) or 119 may be exercised by a person designated by the Commission.
- (2) A designation under this section may be for some or all purposes of the function.
- (3) A person designated under this section must—
 - (a) comply with directions given by the Commission, and
 - (b) have regard to guidance given by the Commission.
- (4) A designation under this section may be revoked.
- (5) The delegation of a function does not affect—
 - (a) the Commission’s ability to exercise the function, or
 - (b) the Commission’s responsibility for the exercise of the function.
- (6) The Commission may pay to any person by whom any function is exercisable by virtue of subsection (1)—
 - (a) amounts it considers appropriate for the purpose of meeting expenditure incurred or to be incurred by that person in, or in connection with, the exercise of that function;
 - (b) such remuneration as it may determine.

Commencement Information

I202 S. 120 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Supplementary provisions about apprenticeship agreements

121 Ineffective provisions of approved Welsh apprenticeship agreements

- (1) If an agreement—
 - (a) contains provision that satisfies the conditions mentioned in section 112(1)(a) to (c), but
 - (b) also contains provision that is inconsistent with those conditions, the other provision is to be treated as having no effect.
- (2) Before an agreement that satisfies the conditions mentioned in section 112(1)(a) to (c) is varied in such a way that it no longer satisfies one or more of those conditions, the person for whom the apprentice is working must give the apprentice a notice.
- (3) The notice must explain that if the variation takes effect the agreement will cease to be an approved Welsh apprenticeship agreement.
- (4) If an agreement is varied in breach of the requirement in subsection (2), the variation has no effect.

Commencement Information

I203 S. 121 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

122 Status of approved Welsh apprenticeship agreements

- (1) To the extent that it would otherwise be treated as being a contract of apprenticeship, an approved Welsh apprenticeship agreement is to be treated as not being a contract of apprenticeship.
- (2) To the extent that it would not otherwise be treated as being a contract of service, an approved Welsh apprenticeship agreement is to be treated as being a contract of service.
- (3) This section applies for the purposes of any enactment or rule of law.

Commencement Information

I204 S. 122 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

123 Transfer of copyright in apprenticeship frameworks

- (1) This section applies where an apprenticeship framework is—
 - (a) prepared by a person other than the Commission, and
 - (b) published by the Commission under section 117(2) with the agreement of the person who, immediately before publication, is entitled to any right or interest in any copyright in the framework.
- (2) The right or interest is, by virtue of this section, transferred from that person to the Commission on publication.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I205 S. 123 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

124 Crown servants

- (1) This Part applies in relation to an agreement under which a person undertakes Crown employment as it applies in relation to any other agreement under which a person undertakes to work for another.
- (2) Subsection (1) is subject to subsection (3) and to any modifications which may be provided for under subsection (5).
- (3) Section 122(2) does not apply in relation to an approved Welsh apprenticeship agreement that is an agreement within subsection (1).
- (4) Without prejudice to section 143(2), the power conferred by section 112(1)(c) may be exercised, in particular, to make provision in relation to an apprenticeship agreement which is an agreement within subsection (1) that differs from provision made in relation to other agreements under which a person is to work for another.
- (5) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, provide for any provision of this Part to apply with modifications in relation to—
 - (a) an agreement within subsection (1), or
 - (b) a person working, or proposing to work, under such an agreement.
- (6) In subsection (1), “Crown employment” means employment under or for the purposes of the Welsh Government, a United Kingdom Government department or any officer or body exercising on behalf of the Crown functions conferred by a statutory provision (but does not include service as a member of the naval, military or air forces of the Crown).

Commencement Information

I206 S. 124 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

General

125 Interpretation of Part 4

In this Part—

“apprenticeship certificate” (“*tystysgrif brentisiaeth*”) means a certificate issued section 119;

“apprenticeship framework” (“*fframwaith prentisiaeth*”) has the meaning given by section 114;

“approved Welsh apprenticeship” (“*prentisiaeth Gymreig gymeradwy*”) has the meaning given by section 111;

“approved Welsh apprenticeship agreement” (“*cytundeb prentisiaeth Gymreig gymeradwy*”) has the meaning given by section 112.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I207 S. 125 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

PART 5

LEARNER PROTECTION, COMPLAINTS PROCEDURES AND LEARNER ENGAGEMENT

126 Learner protection plans

- (1) The Commission may give notice to a relevant tertiary education provider asking it to submit a learner protection plan to the Commission on or before the date specified in the notice.
- (2) A learner protection plan is a document setting out the relevant tertiary education provider’s arrangements for—
 - (a) protecting the interests of persons undertaking a relevant course in the event of the course ceasing to be provided for any reason, and
 - (b) supporting a person who is undertaking a relevant course and who wishes to transfer to another course of tertiary education (whether that course is provided by, or on behalf of, the tertiary education provider or another person).
- (3) The Commission may approve the learner protection plan with or without modifications.
- (4) If a relevant tertiary education provider wishes to amend its approved learner protection plan, it must send a revised plan to the Commission.
- (5) The Commission may approve the revised learner protection plan with or without modifications.
- (6) The Commission must issue guidance on the preparation and revision of learner protection plans.
- (7) Before issuing guidance under subsection (6), the Commission must consult such persons as it considers appropriate.
- (8) The Commission must monitor the effectiveness of learner protection plans.
- (9) The Commission must include in its annual report (prepared under paragraph 16 of Schedule 1) the conclusions it reaches from that monitoring as to the effectiveness of learner protection plans during the financial year to which the report relates.
- (10) In this section and in section 127—

“relevant course” (“*cwrs perthnasol*”), in relation to a relevant tertiary education provider, is—

 - (a) where the provider is a registered provider, any course of tertiary education provided by it or on its behalf;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) where the provider is not a registered provider, a course of tertiary education provided by it or on its behalf which is funded by the Commission under—
- (i) section 89(3)(a) (higher education courses specified in regulations),
 - (ii) section 97(1)(a) (further education or training), or
 - (iii) section 104(1)(a) (apprenticeships);
- “relevant tertiary education provider” (“*darparwr addysg drydyddol perthnasol*”) is—
- (a) a registered provider;
 - (b) a person other than a registered provider in receipt of financial resources provided or secured by the Commission under—
 - (i) section 89(3)(a) (higher education courses specified in regulations),
 - (ii) section 97(1)(a) (further education or training), or
 - (iii) section 104(1)(a) (apprenticeships).

Commencement Information

I208 S. 126 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

127 Complaints procedures

- (1) The Commission must take such steps as appear to it appropriate to ensure that a relevant tertiary education provider—
- (a) has in place a procedure for investigating complaints about an act or omission of the provider which are made by persons who are undertaking or have undertaken relevant courses, and
 - (b) takes reasonable steps to make the procedure known to persons undertaking relevant courses.
- (2) For the meaning of “relevant course” and “relevant tertiary education provider”, see section 126(10).

Commencement Information

I209 S. 127 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

128 Qualifying institutions for student complaints scheme

- (1) The [Higher Education Act 2004 \(c. 8\)](#) is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 11 (qualifying institutions)—
- (a) the existing text becomes subsection (1);
 - (b) after that subsection insert—
 - “(2) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, specify as a qualifying institution for the purposes of this Part, a person other than one within subsection (1) who is—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) a registered provider, or
- (b) a tertiary education provider in Wales other than a registered provider in receipt of financial resources—
 - (i) provided by the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research under section 89(3)(a) of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 (higher education courses specified in regulations),
 - (ii) secured by the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research or the Welsh Ministers under section 97(1)(a) of that Act (further education or training), or
 - (iii) provided by the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research under section 104(1)(a) of that Act (apprenticeships).

(3) In subsection (2)—

“registered provider” means a tertiary education provider registered in the register established and maintained by the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research under section 25 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022;

“tertiary education provider in Wales” has the meaning given by section 144(1) of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022.

(4) The power to make regulations in subsection (2) is to be exercised by statutory instrument.

(5) A statutory instrument containing regulations made under subsection (2) is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of Senedd Cymru.”

(3) In section 12 (qualifying complaints)—

(a) after subsection (2) insert—

“(2A) A complaint within subsection (1) about an act or omission of a qualifying institution specified in regulations made under paragraph (b) of subsection (2) of section 11 is a qualifying complaint only if it is made by a person who is undertaking or has undertaken a course funded by the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research or the Welsh Ministers under—

- (a) section 89(3)(a) of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 (higher education courses specified in regulations),
- (b) section 97(1)(a) of that Act (further education or training), or
- (c) section 104(1)(a) of that Act (apprenticeships).”

(b) in subsection (3) for “section 11” substitute “subsection (1) of section 11, or of a qualifying institution specified in regulations made under subsection (2) of that section.”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I210 S. 128 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

129 Learner Engagement Code

- (1) The Commission must prepare and publish a code (“the Learner Engagement Code”) about the involvement of persons receiving tertiary education provided by, or on behalf of, a relevant provider (“learners”) in the making of relevant decisions by the provider.
- (2) The Learner Engagement Code may include provision about the following (among other things)—
 - (a) how to ensure that the interests of learners are effectively represented in the making of relevant decisions by the relevant provider,
 - (b) how to ensure that learners have the opportunity to participate in the making of relevant decisions by the relevant provider, and
 - (c) how to ensure that learners have the opportunity to give their views to the relevant provider about the tertiary education they are receiving and on other matters that may be of concern or interest to them.
- (3) The Commission must keep the Learner Engagement Code under review and if it considers it appropriate, it must prepare and publish a revised code (and references in this section to the Learner Engagement Code include any revised code).
- (4) A provision of the Learner Engagement Code may take the form of a requirement or guidance.
- (5) In preparing the Learner Engagement Code or revised code, the Commission must consult with such persons as the Commission considers appropriate.
- (6) The Learner Engagement Code may make different provision for different purposes (including for different relevant providers or different descriptions of relevant provider).
- (7) The Commission must monitor compliance by relevant providers with the Learner Engagement Code.
- (8) The Commission must include in its annual report (prepared under paragraph 16 of Schedule 1) the conclusions it reaches from that monitoring as to the effectiveness of the Learner Engagement Code during the financial year to which the report relates.
- (9) In this section—

“relevant decision” (“*penderfyniad perthnasol*”) means a decision about matters that may be of concern or interest to learners on courses which are—

 - (a) provided by, or on behalf of, a registered provider,
 - (b) where provided by, or on behalf, of a tertiary education provider other than a registered provider, funded by the Commission under—
 - (i) section 89(3)(a) (higher education courses specified in regulations),
 - (ii) section 97(1)(a) (further education or training), or
 - (iii) section 104(1)(a) (apprenticeships), or
 - (c) provided by the governing body of a maintained school in Wales;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“relevant provider” (“*darparwr perthnasol*”) means—

- (a) a registered provider;
- (b) a tertiary education provider in Wales other than a registered provider in receipt of financial resources provided or secured by the Commission under—
 - (i) section 89(3)(a) (higher education courses specified in regulations),
 - (ii) section 97(1)(a) (further education or training), or
 - (iii) section 104(1)(a) (apprenticeships);
- (c) the governing body of a maintained school in Wales that provides education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age.

Commencement Information

I211 S. 129 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PART 6

INFORMATION, ADVICE AND GUIDANCE

130 Information and advice from the Commission and information from the Welsh Ministers

- (1) The Commission must give the Welsh Ministers—
 - (a) such information relating to any of its functions or obtained in the exercise of any of its functions as the Welsh Ministers request, and
 - (b) such advice relating to any of its functions as the Welsh Ministers request.
- (2) Information and advice given under subsection (1) must be given in such form and manner as the Welsh Ministers may determine.
- (3) The Commission may give the Welsh Ministers—
 - (a) information relating to any of its functions or obtained in the exercise of any of its functions, or
 - (b) advice relating to any of its functions.
- (4) The Welsh Ministers may give the Commission information for the purposes of the exercise of any of its functions.

Commencement Information

I212 S. 130 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I213 S. 130 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(q\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

131 Persons required to provide information to the Commission

- (1) The Commission may, by notice, require a person within subsection (2) to give the Commission such information as it requests for the purposes of the exercise of any of the Commission’s functions.
- (2) The persons within this subsection are—
 - (a) a registered provider;
 - [^{F1}(aa) a person other than a regulated institution in receipt of financial resources provided under section 65 (administration of funds by the Commission) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992;]
 - (b) a person other than a registered provider in receipt of financial resources provided under—
 - (i) section 88(2) (services provided in connection with higher education),
 - (ii) section 89 (higher education courses specified in regulations),
 - (iii) section 92 (financial support for certain higher education courses),
 - (iv) section 97 (further education or training),
 - (v) section 103 (other activities connected to tertiary education),
 - (vi) section 104 (apprenticeships),
 - (vii) section 105(2) (services provided in connection with research and innovation), or
 - (viii) section 136 (research by the Commission or the Welsh Ministers);
 - (c) a local authority;
 - (d) the governing body of a maintained school in Wales that is providing, or has arranged for the provision of, higher education to pupils at the school under section 28A of the [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#);
 - (e) a body designated under Schedule 3 to exercise the Commission’s functions under section 54 (assessment of quality of higher education);
 - (f) a person designated by the Commission under section 120 to exercise the Commission’s functions under section 117(2) (publication of apprenticeship frameworks) or section 119 (issue of apprenticeship certificates);
 - (g) any person providing further education or training and who is in receipt of financial support from the Welsh Ministers.

[^{F2}(2A) In section 131(2)(aa), “regulated institution” has the meaning given in section 7(5)(b) of the Higher Education (Wales) Act 2015.]

- (3) A notice under subsection (1) to a person mentioned in subsection (2)(c) to (g) may not require the person to give information other than—
 - (a) in the case of a person mentioned in subsection (2)(c), (d) or (g), information held by the person for the purpose of the provision of tertiary education;
 - (b) in the case of a body mentioned in subsection (2)(e), information held by the body for the purpose of the exercise of any of the Commission’s functions under section 54;
 - (c) in the case of a person mentioned in subsection (2)(f), information held by the person for the purpose of the exercise of any of the Commission’s functions under section 117(2) or 119.
- (4) A notice under subsection (1) may require the information to be given—
 - (a) by a time specified in the notice, and
 - (b) in a form and manner specified in the notice.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) If a person fails to comply with a notice under subsection (1) and does not satisfy the Commission that the information requested cannot be given, the duty to comply with the notice is enforceable by injunction on the application of the Commission.
- (6) The Commission may give a person listed in subsection (2) information about any matter in relation to which the Commission has a function.

Textual Amendments

- F1** S. 131(2)(aa) inserted (temp.) (1.8.2024) by virtue of [The Tertiary Education and Research \(Wales\) Act 2022 \(Commencement No. 4 and Transitory and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2024 \(S.I. 2024/806\)](#), [art. 16\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with art. 28)
- F2** S. 131(2A) inserted (temp.) (1.8.2024) by virtue of [The Tertiary Education and Research \(Wales\) Act 2022 \(Commencement No. 4 and Transitory and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2024 \(S.I. 2024/806\)](#), [art. 16\(1\)\(3\)](#) (with art. 28)

Commencement Information

- I214** S. 131 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
- I215** S. 131(1)(2)(c)(d)(4)(5) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(e\)](#) (with art. 28)
- I216** S. 131(2)(a)(b)(viii) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 8\(1\)](#) (with arts. 8(2), 28)
- I217** S. 131(3)(a) in force at 1.8.2024 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 3\(a\)](#) (with art. 28)
- I218** S. 131(6) in force at 1.8.2024 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 3\(b\)](#) (with art. 28)

132 Powers to share information

- (1) Each of the following may give the Commission information for the purposes of the exercise of any of the Commission's functions—
- (a) Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education and Training in Wales;
 - (b) the Education Workforce Council;
 - (c) Qualifications Wales;
 - (d) the Secretary of State;
 - (e) the Office for Students;
 - (f) a body designated under Schedule 3 to exercise the Commission's functions under section 54 (assessment of quality of higher education);
 - (g) the person designated by the Welsh Ministers under section 13 of the [Higher Education Act 2004 \(c. 8\)](#) as the designated operator of a scheme for the review of student complaints;
 - (h) a person specified in arrangements made by the Welsh Ministers under section 23(4) of the [Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 \(c. 30\)](#) to exercise on their behalf functions exercisable by virtue of regulations under section 22 of that Act (arrangements for giving financial support to students);
 - (i) a person specified in arrangements made by the Welsh Ministers under section 14 of the [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#) (financial assistance for education and children etc.), which, in accordance with section 17 of that Act, provide for the person to give assistance or exercise other functions relating to assistance;
 - (j) a person providing services to one or more tertiary education providers in Wales that are institutions within the higher education sector relating to applications for admission on to higher education courses provided by them;
 - (k) a person specified in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) The Commission may give a person listed in subsection (1) and any other person it considers appropriate information about any matter in relation to which it has a function.

Commencement Information

I219 S. 132 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I220 S. 132(1)(a)-(e)(g)-(k)(2) in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, [art. 2\(r\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

133 Power to require application-to-acceptance information

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may, by notice, require a person within subsection (2) to give them or the Commission such application-to-acceptance information as may be described in the notice for use for qualifying research.
- (2) A person within this subsection is one providing services to one or more tertiary education providers in Wales that are institutions within the higher education sector relating to applications for admission on to higher education courses provided by them.
- (3) “Application-to-acceptance information” means information relating to—
- applications for admission to higher education courses provided by tertiary education providers in Wales that are institutions within the higher education sector (including predicted grades),
 - offers and rejections given to individuals in respect of applications for admission to those courses, or
 - the acceptance of such offers.
- (4) “Qualifying research” means—
- research into the choices available to individuals who are—
 - applying for admission on to higher education courses provided by tertiary education providers in Wales that are institutions within the higher education sector, or
 - considering whether to accept an offer for admission on such a course from such a provider;
 - research into equality of opportunity in connection with access to and participation in higher education provided by tertiary education providers in Wales that are institutions within the higher education sector;
 - research into any other topic approved by the Welsh Ministers.
- (5) A notice under subsection (1) may require the information to be given—
- by a time specified in the notice, and
 - in a form and manner specified in the notice.
- (6) If a person fails to comply with a notice under subsection (1) and does not satisfy the Welsh Ministers that the information described in the notice cannot be given, the duty to comply with the notice is enforceable by injunction on the application of the Welsh Ministers.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I221 S. 133 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

134 Use of application-to-acceptance information for research purposes

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may—
 - (a) use information obtained under section 133 for qualifying research, and
 - (b) give information obtained under section 133 to the Commission or to an approved person for use for qualifying research.
- (2) The Welsh Ministers, the Commission or an approved person may publish the product of research carried out using information obtained under section 133 so long as—
 - (a) a purpose in publishing it is to provide statistical information,
 - (b) no individual to whom the information obtained under section 133 relates may be identified from the publication, and
 - (c) the publication does not include information obtained under section 133 that may be regarded as commercially sensitive.
- (3) “Approved person” means—
 - (a) a body approved by the Welsh Ministers for the purposes of this section that uses or disseminates information for the purpose of research (“an approved body”), or
 - (b) an individual approved by the Welsh Ministers or an approved body for the purposes of this section (“an approved researcher”).
- (4) An approved body may give information obtained under section 133 to an approved researcher, but an approved researcher may not give that information to—
 - (a) another approved researcher, or
 - (b) another approved body.
- (5) The Welsh Ministers must publish guidance regarding factors to be taken into account in deciding whether to approve a body or individual for the purposes of this section.
- (6) “Qualifying research” has the same meaning as in section 133.

Commencement Information

I222 S. 134 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

135 Other information, advice and guidance

- (1) The Commission may give advice and issue guidance (whether general or specific) to any person about the provision of tertiary education or any matter connected with the Commission’s functions.
- (2) The Commission must—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) identify good practice in relation to the sharing of information by the persons specified in subsection (3), and
 - (b) give advice and issue guidance about such practice to those persons.
- (3) The persons specified in this subsection are—
 - (a) a registered provider,
 - (b) a person other than a registered provider providing tertiary education funded or otherwise secured by the Commission.
- (4) The Commission must publish any guidance it issues under subsections (1) and (2).
- (5) The Commission must establish systems for collecting information which is designed to secure that its decisions with regard to tertiary education are made on a sound basis.

Commencement Information

I223 S. 135 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I224 S. 135(1)(2)(4)(5) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 2\(f\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

I225 S. 135(3) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 9\(1\)](#) (with [arts. 9\(2\), 28](#))

136 Research by the Commission or the Welsh Ministers

- (1) The Commission or the Welsh Ministers may carry out, or secure the provision of financial resources to persons carrying out or proposing to carry out, research in relation to—
 - (a) Welsh tertiary education;
 - (b) other education or training—
 - (i) provided wholly or mainly in Wales, or
 - (ii) to persons who are ordinarily resident in Wales;
 - (c) any matter connected to education or training described in paragraph (a) or (b);
 - (d) any other matter relevant to the Commission’s functions.
- (2) The Commission or the Welsh Ministers may publish, or arrange for the publication of, the results of such research so long as no individual to whom the research relates may be identified from the publication.
- (3) The Commission or the Welsh Ministers may secure the provision of financial resources under subsection (1)—
 - (a) by providing resources itself or themselves;
 - (b) by making arrangements for the provision of resources by another person;
 - (c) by making arrangements for the provision of resources by persons jointly (whether or not including the Commission or the Welsh Ministers).
- (4) If the Commission itself, or the Welsh Ministers themselves, provide financial resources under subsection (1), they may impose such terms and conditions as they consider appropriate.
- (5) The terms and conditions may (among other things)—
 - (a) enable the Commission or the Welsh Ministers to require the repayment, in whole or in part, of sums paid by them if any of the terms and conditions subject to which the sums were paid is not complied with;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) require the payment of interest in respect of any period in which a sum due to the Commission or the Welsh Ministers in accordance with any of the terms and condition remains unpaid.
- (6) If the Commission has made arrangements under subsection (3)(b) for another person to provide the Commission’s financial resources, the Commission may require that person to provide the resources subject to such terms and conditions that the Commission considers appropriate (including terms and conditions of a kind that could be imposed under subsection (5)).

Commencement Information

I226 S. 136 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I227 S. 136 in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(g\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

PART 7

MISCELLANEOUS AND GENERAL

Higher education corporations

PROSPECTIVE

137 Instruments of government of higher education corporations in Wales

- (1) Section 124A of the [Education Reform Act 1988 \(c. 40\)](#) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (9), for the words “3 to 5 and” substitute “2 to”.
- (3) After subsection (9) insert—
- “(9A) Before making an order under subsection (9) the Welsh Ministers must consult—
- (a) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research, and
 - (b) any other persons they think appropriate.
- (9B) An order made under subsection (9) may, where it is necessary in consequence of amendments made to Schedule 7A to this Act, repeal or amend the following provisions of this Act—
- (a) subsection 122A(3);
 - (b) in subsection (4) of this section, the words “any provision authorised to be made by that Schedule and”;
 - (c) in section 124C—
 - (i) in subsection (1), the words beginning with “and, in determining” to the end;
 - (ii) subsection (2).”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I228 S. 137 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148](#)

PROSPECTIVE

138 Articles of government of higher education corporations in Wales

- (1) The [Education Reform Act 1988 \(c. 40\)](#) is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 125, after subsection (7) insert—
 - “(8) The Welsh Ministers may by order amend or repeal any of subsections (2) to (4) of this section.
 - (9) Before making an order under subsection (8) the Welsh Ministers must consult—
 - (a) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research, and
 - (b) any other persons they think appropriate.”
- (3) In section 232—
 - (a) in subsection (1), after the words “Secretary of State” insert “or the Welsh Ministers”;
 - (b) after subsection (4) insert—
 - “(4ZA) A statutory instrument containing any order or regulations made by the Welsh Ministers under this Act, other than an order under section 124A, 125, 214 or 216, shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of Senedd Cymru.
 - (4ZB) A statutory instrument containing an order made by the Welsh Ministers under section 124A or 125 of this Act may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by resolution of, Senedd Cymru.
 - (4ZC) For the purposes of subsection (4ZA) above, any order or regulations made by the Welsh Ministers under this Act includes any order or regulations made under a power that is expressed as a power of the Secretary of State and has been transferred to the Welsh Ministers.”;
 - (c) in subsection (5), for the word “thinks” substitute “or the Welsh Ministers think”.

Commencement Information

I229 S. 138 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148](#)

139 Dissolution of higher education corporations in Wales

- (1) Section 128 of the [Education Reform Act 1988 \(c. 40\)](#) is amended as follows.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In subsection (1), in sub-paragraph (b)(iii), for the words “the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research (“the Commission”)”.
- (3) After subsection (1) insert—
- “(1A) An order under this section may be made only if—
- (a) the higher education corporation to be dissolved has requested that an order be made, or
 - (b) if there has been no such request, the higher education corporation consents to an order being made.
- (1B) But an order may be made as if consent had been given under subsection (1A)
- (b) if the Welsh Ministers consider that the higher education corporation—
 - (a) has unreasonably withheld its consent, or
 - (b) has unreasonably delayed in giving or withholding its consent.
- (1C) An order under subsection (1)(b)—
- (a) may, in relation to any property or rights of the corporation transferred under the order, make provision about the effect of such transfer on any right of pre-emption, right of return or other similar right that may apply in respect of such property or rights (including provision about the calculation and payment of any just compensation);
 - (b) has effect in relation to property, rights or liabilities to which it applies in spite of any provision (of whatever nature) of any enactment or any rule of law, which would otherwise prevent, penalise or restrict the transfer of the property rights or liabilities.”

(4) In subsection (4), in paragraph (b), for the words “the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission”.

(5) For subsection (5), substitute—

“(5) In this section—

“charitable purposes” has the meaning given by section 11 of the [Charities Act 2011 \(c. 25\)](#);

“right of return means any right under a provision for the return or reversion of property in specified circumstances.”

(6) After subsection (6), insert—

“(7) The Welsh Ministers must publish a statement setting out the circumstances in which they propose to exercise the power under this section to make an order.

(8) The Welsh Ministers—

 - (a) must keep the statement under review;
 - (b) may revise it.

(9) Before publishing the statement or a revised statement, the Welsh Ministers must consult such persons as they consider appropriate.

(10) As soon as possible after publishing the statement or revised statement, the Welsh Ministers must lay a copy of it before Senedd Cymru.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I230 S. 139 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148](#)

I231 [S. 139\(1\)\(2\)\(4\)](#) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(h\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Consultation about careers services

140 Duty to consult the Commission on careers services

In the [Employment and Training Act 1973 \(c.50\)](#), after section 9 insert—

“9A Duty of Welsh Ministers to consult the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research

- (1) In each financial year the Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research on strategic priorities in the next financial year for the performance of their duty in section 8 and the exercise of their power in section 9.
- (2) In this section, “financial year means a period of 12 months ending on 31 March.”

Commencement Information

I232 S. 140 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148](#)

I233 [S. 140](#) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(i\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

General

141 Data Protection

- (1) This section applies to a duty or power to disclose or use information where the duty or power is imposed or conferred by or under any provision of this Act.
- (2) A duty or power to which this section applies does not operate to require or authorise the disclosure or use of information which would contravene the data protection legislation; but the duty or power is to be taken into account in determining whether the disclosure or use would contravene that legislation.
- (3) In this section, “data protection legislation” has the same meaning as in the Data Protection Act 2018 (see section 3 of that Act).

Commencement Information

I234 S. 141 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148](#)

I235 [S. 141](#) in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(s\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

142 Publication

- (1) Where this Act imposes a duty to publish anything, it must be published—
 - (a) electronically, and
 - (b) in such other manner as the person subject to the duty considers appropriate.
- (2) The duty to publish electronically is—
 - (a) a duty to provide access free of charge, and
 - (b) a duty to publish on the person’s own website, if the person has one.
- (3) Copies of anything published under subsection (1)(b) may be supplied free of charge or on payment of such fee, not exceeding the cost of supplying the copy, as the person subject to the duty to publish may determine.

Commencement Information

I236 S. 142 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148](#)

I237 S. 142 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(t\)](#)

143 Regulations

- (1) A power to make regulations under this Act is to be exercised by statutory instrument.
- (2) A power to make regulations under this Act includes power to make—
 - (a) different provision for different purposes or different areas;
 - (b) incidental, supplementary, consequential, transitory, transitional or saving provision.
- (3) A statutory instrument to which this subsection applies may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, Senedd Cymru.
- (4) Subsection (3) applies to a statutory instrument containing regulations under any of the following provisions—
 - (a) from Part 1, section 22(1);
 - (b) from Part 2, sections 25(2), 27(6), 32(2)(b), 34, 41(2), 46(6), 80(1)(c) and (2) and 83(4);
 - (c) from Part 3, sections 88(3), 94(3) and (7)(b), 98(2), 99(6), 104(5) and 105(4);
 - (d) from Part 4, sections 111(4), 112(1)(c) and 113(1);
 - (e) from this Part—
 - (i) section 145;
 - (ii) section 146, but only where the regulations amend, repeal or otherwise modify a provision of an Act of Parliament, a Measure of the National Assembly for Wales or an Act of Senedd Cymru.
- (5) A statutory instrument containing regulations made by the Welsh Ministers under this Act to which subsection (4) does not apply is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of Senedd Cymru.

Commencement Information

I238 S. 143 in force at 9.9.2022, see [s. 148\(1\)\(a\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

144 General interpretation

(1) In this Act—

“additional learning needs” (“*anghenion dysgu ychwanegol*”) has the meaning given by section 2 of the [Additional Learning Needs and Education Tribunal \(Wales\) Act 2018 \(anaw 2\)](#);

“additional learning provision” (“*darpariaeth ddysgu ychwanegol*”) has the meaning given by section 3 of the [Additional Learning Needs and Education Tribunal \(Wales\) Act 2018 \(anaw 2\)](#);

“the Commission” (“*y Comisiwn*”) means the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research (see section 1);

“facilities for Wales” (“*cyfleusterau i Gymru*”) includes—

- (a) facilities in Wales, and
- (b) other facilities available to persons ordinarily resident in Wales;

“financial resources” (“*adnoddau ariannol*”) means financial resources of any kind including grants, loans and other payments;

“functions” (“*swyddogaethau*”) means powers and duties;

“governing body” (“*corff llywodraethu*”)—

- (a) in relation to a training provider who but for this section would not be regarded as an institution, means any persons responsible for the provider’s management;
- (b) in relation to a school, means its proprietor within the meaning given by section 579(1) of the [Education Act 1996 \(c. 56\)](#);
- (c) in relation to a provider designated under section 83, means any persons responsible for the provider’s management;
- (d) in relation to any other institution, has the meaning given by section 90(1) of the [Further and Higher Education Act 1992 \(c. 13\)](#), but subject to any provision made by virtue of section 90(2) of that Act;

“higher education” (“*addysg uwch*”) means education provided by means of a course of any description mentioned in Schedule 6 to the [Education Reform Act 1988 \(c. 40\)](#);

“institution” (“*sefydliad*”) includes any training provider (whether or not the training provider would otherwise be regarded as an institution);

“local authority” (“*awdurdod lleol*”) means the council of a county or county borough in Wales;

“maintained school” (“*ysgol a gynhelir*”) means a community, foundation or voluntary school, or a community special school;

“notice” (“*hysbysiad*”) means notice in writing;

“the register” (“*y gofrestr*”) means the register established and maintained under section 25;

“registered provider” (“*darparwr cofrestredig*”) means a tertiary education provider which is registered in the register; and references to “registration” (“*cofrestru*”) are to be read accordingly;

“school” (“*ysgol*”) has the meaning given by section 4 of the [Education Act 1996 \(c. 56\)](#);

“secondary education” (“*addysg uwchradd*”) has the meaning given by section 2 of the [Education Act 1996 \(c. 56\)](#);

“tertiary education” (“*addysg drydyddol*”) means higher education, further education or training;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“tertiary education provider in Wales” (“*darparwr addysg drydyddol yng Nghymru*”) means an institution providing tertiary education, including tertiary education provided on its behalf, whose activities are wholly or mainly carried on in Wales;

“trade union” has the meaning given by the [Trade Union and Labour Relations \(Consolidation\) Act 1992 \(c. 52\)](#);

“Welsh tertiary education” (“*addysg drydyddol Gymreig*”) means tertiary education—

- (a) provided by, or on behalf of, a tertiary education provider in Wales, or
- (b) funded or otherwise secured by the Commission.

- (2) References in this Act to further education are to education (other than higher education) suitable to the requirements of persons who are over compulsory school age and organised leisure-time occupation connected with such education.
- (3) Accordingly for the purposes of this Act, further education includes education suitable to the requirements of pupils over compulsory school age but under 19 which is provided at a school at which secondary education is also provided.
- (4) References in this Act to training are to training suitable to the requirements of persons who are over compulsory school age and organised leisure-time occupation connected with such training.
- (5) For the purposes of subsections (2) and (4)—
 - (a) education includes both full-time and part-time education;
 - (b) training includes both full-time and part-time training;
 - (c) training includes vocational, social, physical and recreational training.
- (6) In this Act—
 - (a) references to institutions within the further education sector are references to institutions falling within section 91(3) of the [Further and Higher Education Act 1992 \(c. 13\)](#), and
 - (b) references to institutions within the higher education sector are references to institutions falling within section 91(5) of the [Further and Higher Education Act 1992](#).
- (7) Subsections (2) and (3) of section 8 of the [Education Act 1996 \(c. 56\)](#) apply to determine, for the purposes of this Act, whether a person is of compulsory school age, so far as that section applies in relation to Wales.
- (8) References in this Act (however expressed) to the provision of tertiary education by, or on behalf of, a tertiary education provider in Wales (including a registered provider or specified provider) include courses of tertiary education provided—
 - (a) at one or more places in Wales or elsewhere,
 - (b) by means of correspondence, equipment or other facility that enables persons who are not in the same place (whether in Wales or elsewhere) to participate in the tertiary education, or
 - (c) by a combination of the ways described in paragraphs (a) and (b).
- (9) In subsection (1), “training provider” means a person who provides training for members of the school workforce (within the meaning given by section 100 of the [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#)).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (10) For the purposes of this Act, tertiary education provided outside Wales is to be treated as provided in Wales if it is provided as part of a course that is provided mainly in Wales.

Commencement Information

I239 S. 144 in force at 9.9.2022, see [s. 148\(1\)\(a\)](#)

145 Power to provide for the Open University to be treated as a tertiary education provider in Wales

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may, by regulations, provide for the Open University to be treated as a tertiary education provider in Wales for the purpose of any provision in, or made under, this Act.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) may modify the effect of a provision in, or made under, this Act so far as it applies to the Open University, whether as a tertiary education provider in Wales or a registered provider (if it becomes one).

Commencement Information

I240 S. 145 in force at 9.9.2022, see [s. 148\(1\)\(a\)](#)

146 Power to make consequential and transitional provision etc.

- (1) If the Welsh Ministers consider it appropriate for the purposes of, in consequence of, or for giving full effect to any provision of this Act, they may, by regulations, make—
- (a) supplementary, incidental or consequential provision;
 - (b) transitional, transitory or saving provision.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) may amend, modify, repeal or revoke any enactment (including an enactment contained in this Act).

Commencement Information

I241 S. 146 in force at 9.9.2022, see [s. 148\(1\)\(a\)](#)

147 Minor and consequential amendments

Schedule 4 makes minor provision and provision in consequence of this Act.

Commencement Information

I242 S. 147 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148](#)

I243 [S. 147](#) in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(u\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

148 Coming into force

- (1) The following provisions of this Act come into force on the day after the day on which this Act receives Royal Assent—
 - (a) sections 143 to 146;
 - (b) this section;
 - (c) section 149.
- (2) The other provisions of this Act come into force on a day appointed by the Welsh Ministers in an order made by statutory instrument.
- (3) An order under subsection (2) may—
 - (a) appoint different days for different purposes;
 - (b) make transitory, transitional or saving provision in connection with the coming into force of a provision brought into force by the order.

Commencement Information

I244 S. 148 in force at 9.9.2022, see [s. 148\(1\)\(b\)](#)

149 Short title

- (1) The short title of this Act is the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022.
- (2) This Act is to be included in the list of Education Acts set out in section 578 of the [Education Act 1996 \(c. 56\)](#).

Commencement Information

I245 S. 149 in force at 9.9.2022, see [s. 148\(1\)\(c\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULE 1

(introduced by section 1)

COMMISSION FOR TERTIARY EDUCATION AND RESEARCH

Status

- 1 The Commission is not to be regarded as a servant or agent of the Crown or as enjoying any status, immunity or privilege of the Crown.

Commencement Information

- I246** Sch. 1 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I247 Sch. 1 para. 1 in force at 15.12.2022 by [S.I. 2022/1318](#), [art. 2\(c\)\(i\)](#)

Membership

- 2 (1) The members of the Commission are—
- (a) the person appointed by the Welsh Ministers to chair the Commission (“the chair”);
 - (b) the person appointed by the Welsh Ministers as the chair of the RIC under paragraph 12(1) who is to be the deputy chair of the Commission;
 - (c) at least 4 and no more than 14 other persons appointed by the Welsh Ministers under this paragraph (“ordinary members”);
 - (d) the person appointed under paragraph 10 as chief executive of the Commission (“the chief executive”).
- (2) In appointing the chair and ordinary members the Welsh Ministers must have regard to the desirability of the Commission’s members (between them) having experience of, and having shown capability in—
- (a) the provision of education or training;
 - (b) the carrying out or administration of research;
 - (c) industrial, commercial or financial matters or the practice of any profession;
 - (d) promoting the needs of learners in tertiary education.
 - (e) the provision of education or training through the medium of Welsh or the promotion of such education or training.

Commencement Information

- I248** Sch. 1 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I249 Sch. 1 para. 2 in force at 15.12.2022 by [S.I. 2022/1318](#), [art. 2\(c\)\(i\)](#)

The chair and ordinary members

- 3 (1) The chair and ordinary members hold and vacate office in accordance with the terms and conditions of their appointment.
- (2) Those terms and conditions are to be determined by the Welsh Ministers, subject to the provisions of this Schedule.
- (3) A person is disqualified from being the chair or an ordinary member if the person is—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) a Member of the Senedd;
 - (b) a member of the House of Commons;
 - (c) a member of the governing body of a tertiary education provider in Wales that is an institution within the further education sector;
 - (d) a member of the governing body of a tertiary education provider in Wales that is an institution within the higher education sector.
- (4) A person who becomes disqualified ceases to hold office as the chair or as an ordinary member.
- (5) The chair and ordinary members are to be appointed for a term of up to 5 years.
- (6) A person who has held office as the chair or as an ordinary member may be reappointed.
- (7) The chair or an ordinary member may resign from office by giving notice to the Welsh Ministers and to the Commission.
- (8) The Commission may, with the Welsh Ministers’ approval, pay or make provision for the payment of remuneration, allowances and pension to, or in respect of, a person who is or has been the chair or an ordinary member.
- (9) The Welsh Ministers may by notice to the chair, the deputy chair or an ordinary member remove that person from office if they are satisfied that the person is unable or unfit to carry out the functions of office, or is otherwise failing to do so.
- (10) The Welsh Ministers may by notice to the chair, the deputy chair or an ordinary member suspend that person from office, if it appears to them that there may be grounds to exercise the power in sub-paragraph (9).
- (11) A suspension by notice under sub-paragraph (10) has effect—
- (a) for a period specified in the notice, or
 - (b) if no period is specified in the notice, until further notice by the Welsh Ministers to the person suspended.
- (12) A person removed from office as the deputy chair also ceases to hold office as the chair of the RIC.
- (13) A person suspended from office as the deputy chair is also suspended from office as the chair of the RIC.

Commencement Information

I250 Sch. 1 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I251 Sch. 1 para. 3 in force at 15.12.2022 by [S.I. 2022/1318](#), [art. 2\(c\)\(ii\)](#)

Associate membership

- 4 (1) The associate members of the Commission are—
- (a) at least two persons appointed by the Welsh Ministers in accordance with paragraph 5 to represent the wider tertiary education workforce (“associate workforce members”), where at least one is appointed to represent the academic tertiary education workforce and at least one is appointed to represent the non-academic tertiary education workforce;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) where one or more trade unions are recognised by the Commission, a person appointed in accordance with paragraph 6 to represent the staff of the Commission (“associate Commission staff member”);
- (c) at least one person appointed by the Welsh Ministers in accordance with paragraph 7 to represent learners in tertiary education (“associate learner member”).

(2) In this paragraph and paragraph 6, “recognised”, in relation to a trade union, has the meaning given by the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992.

Commencement Information

I252 Sch. 1 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I253 Sch. 1 para. 4(1)(a)(c) in force at 15.12.2022 by S.I. 2022/1318, [art. 2\(c\)\(iii\)](#)

I254 Sch. 1 para. 4(1)(b)(2) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 2\(j\)\(i\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Appointment of associate workforce members

- 5 (1) The Welsh Ministers must publish—
- (a) a list of one or more trade unions for the purpose of appointing associate workforce members to represent the academic tertiary education workforce, and
 - (b) a list of one or more trade unions for the purpose of appointing associate workforce members to represent the non-academic tertiary education workforce.
- (2) Before publishing a list (including a replacement list) under sub-paragraph (1), the Welsh Ministers must consult—
- (a) the Commission, and
 - (b) such other persons as they consider appropriate.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (4) applies if no-one holds the position of associate workforce member to represent the academic tertiary education workforce.
- (4) The Welsh Ministers must invite each of the trade unions on the most recently published list under sub-paragraph (1)(a) to nominate an eligible candidate for appointment as an associate workforce member to represent the academic tertiary education workforce.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (6) applies if no-one holds the position of associate workforce member to represent the non-academic tertiary education workforce.
- (6) The Welsh Ministers must invite each of the trade unions on the most recently published list under sub-paragraph (1)(b) to nominate an eligible candidate for appointment as an associate workforce member to represent the non-academic tertiary education workforce.
- (7) The Welsh Ministers must specify the period within which a nomination under sub-paragraph (4) or (6) is to be made.
- (8) The Welsh Ministers must appoint at least one person, from among the eligible candidates nominated during the period specified under sub-paragraph (7), as an associate workforce member to represent the academic tertiary education workforce.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (9) The Welsh Ministers must appoint at least one person, from among the eligible candidates nominated during the period specified under sub-paragraph (7), as an associate workforce member to represent the non-academic tertiary education workforce.
- (10) A person is an eligible candidate for appointment as an associate workforce member to represent the academic tertiary education workforce only if the person is—
- (a) employed by a person who provides tertiary education in Wales, and
 - (b) a member of a trade union on the most recently published list under sub-paragraph (1)(a).
- (11) A person is an eligible candidate for appointment as an associate workforce member to represent the non-academic tertiary education workforce only if the person is—
- (a) employed by a person who provides tertiary education in Wales, and
 - (b) a member of a trade union on the most recently published list under sub-paragraph (1)(b).

Commencement Information

I255 Sch. 1 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I256 Sch. 1 para. 5(1)(2) in force at 15.12.2022 by S.I. 2022/1318, [art. 2\(c\)\(iv\)](#)

I257 Sch. 1 para. 5(3)-(11) in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, [art. 2\(v\)\(i\)](#)

Appointment of associate Commission staff member

- 6 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies where—
- (a) one or more trade unions are recognised by the Commission, and
 - (b) the position of associate Commission staff member is unoccupied.
- (2) The staff member appointment committee (see paragraph 11(5)) must invite each of the trade unions recognised by the Commission to nominate an eligible candidate for appointment as the associate Commission staff member.
- (3) The staff member appointment committee must specify the period within which a nomination is to be made.
- (4) The staff member appointment committee must appoint a person, from among the eligible candidates nominated during the period specified under sub-paragraph (3), as the associate Commission staff member.
- (5) A person is an eligible candidate for appointment as the associate Commission staff member only if the person is—
- (a) employed by the Commission, and
 - (b) a member of a trade union recognised by the Commission.

Commencement Information

I258 Sch. 1 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I259 Sch. 1 para. 6 in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 2\(j\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Appointment of associate learner member

- 7
- (1) The Welsh Ministers must publish a list of one or more bodies (whether corporate or unincorporate) appearing to them to represent the interests of learners undertaking tertiary education in Wales for the purpose of appointing the associate learner member.
 - (2) Before publishing a list (including a replacement list) under sub-paragraph (1), the Welsh Ministers must consult—
 - (a) the Commission, and
 - (b) such other persons as they consider appropriate.
 - (3) Sub-paragraph (4) applies if no-one holds the position of associate learner member.
 - (4) The Welsh Ministers must invite each of the bodies on the list most recently published under sub-paragraph (1) to nominate an eligible candidate for appointment as the associate learner member.
 - (5) The Welsh Ministers must specify the period within which a nomination under sub-paragraph (4) is to be made.
 - (6) The Welsh Ministers must appoint a person, from among the eligible candidates nominated during the period specified under sub-paragraph (5), as the associate learner member.
 - (7) A person is an eligible candidate for appointment as an associate learner member only if—
 - (a) the person has been a learner undertaking tertiary education at any time during the period of 3 years ending on the day of the appointment, and
 - (b) the person holds an office or any form of membership of a body on the list most recently published under sub-paragraph (1).

Commencement Information

I260 Sch. 1 para. 7 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I261 Sch. 1 para. 7(1)(2) in force at 15.12.2022 by S.I. 2022/1318, **art. 2(c)(v)**

I262 Sch. 1 para. 7(3)-(7) in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, **art. 2(v)(ii)**

Terms of associate membership etc.

- 8
- (1) An associate member is not eligible to vote in any proceedings of the Commission.
 - (2) An associate workforce member and an associate learner member hold and vacate office in accordance with the terms and conditions of their appointment.
 - (3) Those terms and conditions are to be determined by the Welsh Ministers, subject to the provisions of this Schedule.
 - (4) An associate Commission staff member holds and vacates office in accordance with the terms and conditions of their appointment.
 - (5) Those terms and conditions are to be determined by the staff member appointment committee, subject to the provisions of this Schedule.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) The period of office specified in an associate member’s terms of appointment may not exceed 4 years.
- (7) A person who has held office as an associate member may be reappointed as an associate member (and sub-paragraph (6) applies in relation to the appointment).
- (8) An associate workforce member and an associate learner member may resign from office by giving notice to the Welsh Ministers and the chair.
- (9) An associate Commission staff member may resign from office by giving notice to the staff member appointment committee.
- (10) The Commission may, with the approval of the Welsh Ministers, pay an associate member expenses and allowances.

Commencement Information

I263 Sch. 1 para. 8 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I264 Sch. 1 para. 8(1)-(3)(6)-(8)(10) in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, **art. 2(v)(iii)**

I265 Sch. 1 para. 8(4)(5)(9) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, **art. 2(j)(iii)** (with art. 28)

Removal of associate member from office

- 9 (1) The relevant decision maker may by notice to an associate member remove that person from office, if they are satisfied that the person is unable or unfit to carry out the functions of office, or is otherwise failing to do so.
- (2) The relevant decision maker may by notice to an associate member suspend that person from office, if it appears to the relevant decision maker that there may be grounds to exercise the power in sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) A suspension by notice under sub-paragraph (2) has effect—
 - (a) for a period specified in the notice, or
 - (b) if no period is specified in the notice, until further notice by the relevant decision maker to the person suspended.
- (4) In this paragraph, the “relevant decision maker” is—
 - (a) the Welsh Ministers, where the associate member is an associate workforce member or an associate learner member;
 - (b) the staff member appointment committee, where the associate member is an associate Commission staff member.
- (5) An associate member ceases to hold office if the member ceases to be an eligible candidate for appointment to the type of associate membership to which they were appointed (see paragraph 5(10) and (11), paragraph 6(5) and paragraph 7(7)).

Commencement Information

I266 Sch. 1 para. 9 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I267 Sch. 1 para. 9(1)-(3)(4)(a) in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, **art. 2(v)(iv)**

I268 Sch. 1 para. 9(4)(b) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, **art. 2(j)(iv)** (with art. 28)

I269 Sch. 1 para. 9(5) in force at 4.9.2023 for specified purposes by S.I. 2023/919, **art. 3(mm)**

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

I270 Sch. 1 para. 9(5) in force at 1.8.2024 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2024/806, art. 2(j)(iv) (with art. 28)

Chief executive and other staff

- 10 (1) The first person appointed as chief executive of the Commission is to be appointed by the Welsh Ministers—
- (a) on such terms and conditions (including conditions as to remuneration, allowances and pension) as the Welsh Ministers determine, and
 - (b) for a term of up to 4 years.
- (2) Subsequent appointments (or reappointments) of a person as chief executive are to be made by the Commission, with the approval of the Welsh Ministers.
- (3) A person may not be appointed as chief executive if the person is—
- (a) a Member of the Senedd;
 - (b) a member of the House of Commons;
 - (c) a member of the governing body of a tertiary education provider in Wales that is an institution within the further education sector;
 - (d) a member of the governing body of a tertiary education provider in Wales that is an institution within the higher education sector.
- (4) The chief executive is a member of the Commission’s staff.
- (5) The Commission may appoint other members of staff.
- (6) Except in relation to the first person appointed as chief executive under subparagraph (1), the following are to be determined by the Commission, with the approval of the Welsh Ministers—
- (a) the terms and conditions of its staff (including remuneration and allowances);
 - (b) the payment or provision for the payment of pension to or in respect of a member of its staff or a former member of its staff.
- (7) Service as a member of the Commission’s staff is not service in the civil service of the State.

Commencement Information

I271 Sch. 1 para. 10 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 148(2)

I272 Sch. 1 para. 10(1)(3)(4)(7) in force at 15.12.2022 by S.I. 2022/1318, art. 2(c)(vi)

I273 Sch. 1 para. 10(2)(5)(6) in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, art. 2(v)(v)

Research and Innovation Committee, Quality Committee and other committees

- 11 (1) The Commission is to have a committee known as the Research and Innovation Committee (“the RIC”) for the purpose of advising the Commission on matters relating to research and innovation.
- (2) For provision as to the chair of the RIC, see paragraph 12.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) The Commission must establish a committee (“the Quality Committee”) for the purpose of advising the Commission on the quality of all tertiary education funded or otherwise secured by the Commission.
- (4) The Commission must appoint one of its ordinary members to chair meetings of the Quality Committee.
- (5) The Commission must establish a committee composed of the chair and the ordinary members to be the staff member appointment committee.
- (6) The Commission may establish other committees.
- (7) The RIC, the Quality Committee or other committee established under sub-paragraph (6) may—
 - (a) establish sub-committees;
 - (b) dissolve sub-committees established by it.
- (8) The Commission may also dissolve sub-committees established under sub-paragraph (7).
- (9) The members of the RIC, the Quality Committee or other committee established under sub-paragraph (6) or a sub-committee established under sub-paragraph (7) may include persons who are not members of the Commission.
- (10) The Commission may pay remuneration and allowances to any person who—
 - (a) is a member of the RIC, the Quality Committee or other committee established under sub-paragraph (6) or a sub-committee established under sub-paragraph (7), but
 - (b) is not a member of the Commission or a member of its staff.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1** Sch. 1 para. 11(3) modified (temp.) (1.8.2024) by [The Tertiary Education and Research \(Wales\) Act 2022 \(Commencement No. 4 and Transitory and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2024 \(S.I. 2024/806\)](#), [art. 17](#) (with art. 28)

Commencement Information

- I274** Sch. 1 para. 11 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
- I275** Sch. 1 para. 11(1) in force at 15.12.2022 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2022/1318](#), [art. 2\(c\)\(vii\)](#)
- I276** Sch. 1 para. 11(1) in force at 4.9.2023 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(v\)\(vi\)](#)
- I277** Sch. 1 para. 11(2) in force at 15.12.2022 by [S.I. 2022/1318](#), [art. 2\(c\)\(vii\)](#)
- I278** Sch. 1 para. 11(3)(4)(6)-(10) in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(v\)\(vi\)](#)
- I279** Sch. 1 para. 11(5) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(j\)\(v\)](#) (with art. 28)

Chair of the RIC

- 12 (1) The Welsh Ministers must appoint a person to chair the RIC (“the chair of the RIC”).
- (2) The chair of the RIC holds and vacates office in accordance with the terms and conditions of the appointment.
- (3) Those terms and conditions are to be determined by the Welsh Ministers, subject to the provisions of this Schedule.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) A person is disqualified from being the chair of the RIC if the person is—
 - (a) a Member of the Senedd;
 - (b) a member of the House of Commons;
 - (c) a member of the governing body of a tertiary education provider in Wales that is an institution within the further education sector;
 - (d) a member of the governing body of a tertiary education provider in Wales that is an institution within the higher education sector.
- (5) A person who becomes disqualified ceases to hold office as the chair of the RIC.
- (6) The chair of the RIC is to be appointed for a term of up to 5 years.
- (7) A person who has held office as the chair of the RIC may be reappointed.
- (8) The chair of the RIC may resign from office at any time by giving notice to the Welsh Ministers and to the Commission.
- (9) The Commission may, with the Welsh Ministers’ approval, pay or make provision for the payment of remuneration, allowances and pension to, or in respect of, a person who is or has been the chair of the RIC.
- (10) The Welsh Ministers may, by notice to the chair of the RIC, remove the chair from office if they are satisfied that the chair is unable or unfit to carry out the functions of office, or is otherwise failing to do so.
- (11) The Welsh Ministers may, by notice to the chair of the RIC, suspend the chair from office if it appears to them that there may be grounds to exercise the power in sub-paragraph (10).
- (12) A suspension by notice under sub-paragraph (11) has effect—
 - (a) for a period specified in the notice, or
 - (b) if no period is specified in the notice, until further notice by the Welsh Ministers to the chair.
- (13) A person who ceases to hold office as the chair of the RIC also ceases to hold office as the deputy chair of the Commission.
- (14) A person suspended from office as chair of the RIC is also suspended from office as the deputy chair of the Commission.

Commencement Information

I280 Sch. 1 para. 12 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I281 Sch. 1 para. 12 in force at 15.12.2022 by **S.I. 2022/1318, art. 2(c)(viii)**

Joint committees

- 13 (1) The Commission may, in connection with the exercise of its functions, establish a committee jointly with any person.
- (2) In this Schedule a committee established under this paragraph is referred to as a “joint committee”.
- (3) The Commission may pay remuneration and allowances to any person who—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) is a member of a joint committee, but
- (b) is not a member of the Commission or a member of its staff.

Commencement Information

I282 Sch. 1 para. 13 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I283 Sch. 1 para. 13 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(v\)\(vii\)](#)

Duty to ensure good value

- 14 The Commission must have regard to the need to ensure good value in relation to financial resources provided out of public funds.

Commencement Information

I284 Sch. 1 para. 14 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I285 Sch. 1 para. 14 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(v\)\(viii\)](#)

Accounts and audit

- 15 (1) The Commission must—
- (a) keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to them, and
 - (b) prepare a statement of accounts in respect of each financial year in accordance with directions given by the Welsh Ministers.
- (2) The directions may make provision as to—
- (a) the information to be contained in the statement;
 - (b) the manner in which the information is to be presented;
 - (c) the methods and principles according to which the statement is to be prepared;
 - (d) additional information that is to accompany the statement.
- (3) No later than 31 August after the end of each financial year the Commission must submit its statement of accounts to—
- (a) the Auditor General for Wales, and
 - (b) the Welsh Ministers.
- (4) The Auditor General for Wales must examine, certify and report on the statement of accounts.
- (5) The Auditor General for Wales must, before the expiry of the 4-month period, lay before Senedd Cymru—
- (a) a copy of the certified statement and report, or
 - (b) if it is not reasonably practicable to do so, a statement to that effect, which must include reasons as to why this is the case.
- (6) Where a statement has been laid under sub-paragraph (5)(b), the Auditor General must lay a copy of the certified statement and report before Senedd Cymru as soon as reasonably practicable after the expiry of the 4-month period.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (7) In sub-paragraphs (5) and (6), “the 4-month period” means the period of 4 months beginning with the day on which the statement of accounts is submitted to the Auditor General for Wales under sub-paragraph (3).

Commencement Information

I286 Sch. 1 para. 15 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I287 Sch. 1 para. 15(1)(a) in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, [art. 2\(v\)\(ix\)](#)

I288 Sch. 1 para. 15(1)(b)(2)-(7) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 2\(j\)\(vi\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

PROSPECTIVE

Annual reports

- 16 (1) As soon as reasonably practicable after the end of each financial year the Commission must prepare a report (“the annual report”) that—
- (a) gives details of how the Commission has exercised its functions during the year;
 - (b) explains the progress the Commission has made during the year towards implementing its strategic plan approved under section 15 and the extent to which what it has done during the year has addressed the Welsh Ministers’ strategic priorities set out in the statement published under section 13;
 - (c) gives details of the following matters for the Welsh education reporting period, and explains how they compare with the details of those matters for the 12 months preceding that period—
 - (i) the extent to which tertiary education in Wales was provided through the medium of Welsh, and
 - (ii) the extent to which Welsh was taught to persons over compulsory school age in Wales;
 - (d) gives an assessment of the quality of tertiary education the Commission is required to monitor by section 51;
 - (e) includes the information required by section 80(3) (information about financial sustainability);
 - (f) includes the information required by section 107(3) (monitoring of funding for research and innovation);
 - (g) includes the information required by section 126(9) (effectiveness of learner protection plans);
 - (h) includes the information required by section 129(8) (effectiveness of Learner Engagement Code);
 - (i) gives details of how a body designated under Schedule 3 has exercised its functions during the academic year.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(c), “Welsh education reporting period” means the most recent period of 12 months ending on 31 August in respect of which information about the matters set out in sub-paragraph (1)(c)(i) and (ii) is available to the Commission.
- (3) The annual report may include any other information the Commission considers appropriate.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(4) As soon as possible after the report is prepared the Commission must send a copy to the Welsh Ministers.

(5) As soon as possible after receiving the annual report the Welsh Ministers must lay a copy of it before Senedd Cymru.

Commencement Information

I289 Sch. 1 para. 16 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

Meaning of “financial year” and “academic year”

- 17 (1) In paragraphs 15 and 16 “financial year” means—
- (a) the period beginning on the day on which section 1 comes into force and ending on the following 31 March;
 - (b) subsequently, each successive period of 12 months.
- (2) In paragraph 16 “academic year” means the period of 12 months ending on 31 August in the financial year.

Commencement Information

I290 Sch. 1 para. 17 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Delegation by the Commission

- 18 (1) The Commission may delegate any of its functions to—
- (a) a member of the Commission or a member of its staff;
 - (b) the RIC, the Quality Committee or other committee established by the Commission under paragraph 11(6), or a sub-committee established under paragraph 11(7);
 - (c) a joint committee.
- (2) A function is delegated under this paragraph to the extent and on the terms that the Commission determines.
- (3) The delegation of a function does not affect—
- (a) the Commission’s ability to exercise the function;
 - (b) the Commission’s responsibility for the exercise of the function.

Commencement Information

I291 Sch. 1 para. 18 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I292 [Sch. 1 para. 18](#) in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(v\)\(x\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Delegation by committees

- 19 (1) The RIC, the Quality Committee or other committee established under paragraph 11(6) may delegate any of its functions to a sub-committee established by it.
- (2) A function is delegated under this paragraph to the extent and on the terms that the committee delegating the function determines.

Commencement Information

I293 Sch. 1 para. 19 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I294 Sch. 1 para. 19 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(v\)\(xi\)](#)

Proceedings

- 20 (1) The Commission may determine its own procedure (including quorum) and that of its committees and sub-committees.
- (2) The validity of proceedings of the Commission, of its committees or sub-committees, or of a joint committee, is not affected by—
- (a) a vacancy or suspension;
 - (b) a defective appointment.
- (3) A person suspended from office under this Schedule may not take part in proceedings of the Commission, of its committees or sub-committees, or of a joint committee during the period in which the suspension has effect.

Commencement Information

I295 Sch. 1 para. 20 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I296 Sch. 1 para. 20 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(v\)\(xii\)](#)

Register of interests

- 21 (1) The Commission must establish and maintain a register of its members' interests.
- (2) The Commission must publish entries recorded in the register of members' interests.

Commencement Information

I297 Sch. 1 para. 21 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I298 Sch. 1 para. 21 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(v\)\(xiii\)](#)

Supplementary powers

- 22 (1) The Commission may do anything that it considers—
- (a) appropriate for the purposes of, or in connection with, its functions, or
 - (b) incidental or conducive to the exercise of those functions.
- (2) The Commission may (among other things)—
- (a) acquire or dispose of land or other property;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) enter into contracts;
- (c) invest sums;
- (d) accept gifts of money, land or other property.

(3) But the Commission may not borrow money without the approval of the Welsh Ministers.

Commencement Information

I299 Sch. 1 para. 22 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I300 Sch. 1 para. 22 in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, **art. 2(v)(xiv)**

SCHEDULE 2

(introduced by section 24)

TRANSFERS OF PROPERTY AND STAFF TO THE COMMISSION

Power to make transfer schemes

- 1 (1) The Welsh Ministers may make one or more schemes providing for—
- (a) staff of the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales or the Welsh Government to become members of staff of the Commission;
 - (b) the transfer of property, rights and liabilities of the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales or the Welsh Ministers to the Commission.
- (2) The things that may be transferred under a scheme under this Schedule (a “transfer scheme”) include—
- (a) property, rights and liabilities that could not otherwise be transferred;
 - (b) property acquired, and rights and liabilities arising, after the making of the scheme;
 - (c) criminal liabilities.
- (3) A transfer scheme may make consequential, supplementary, incidental, transitional or transitory provision, for example so as to—
- (a) create rights, or impose liabilities, in relation to property or rights transferred;
 - (b) make provision about the continuing effect of things done in respect of anything transferred;
 - (c) make provision about the continuation of things (including legal proceedings) in the process of being done in respect of anything transferred;
 - (d) make provision for the shared ownership or use of property;
 - (e) make provision for references to the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales, the Welsh Government or the Welsh Ministers in an instrument or other document in respect of anything transferred to be treated as references to the Commission;
 - (f) make provision which is the same as or similar to a provision made by the TUPE regulations in a case where those regulations do not apply in relation to the transfer.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

- I301** Sch. 2 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I302 Sch. 2 para. 1 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(w\)](#)

Modification of transfer schemes

- 2 (1) The Welsh Ministers may modify a transfer scheme.
- (2) But if a transfer under the scheme has taken effect, any modification that relates to the transfer may be made only with the agreement of the person (or persons) affected by the modification.
- (3) A modification takes effect from the date when the original scheme came into effect or such later date as the Welsh Ministers may specify.

Commencement Information

- I303** Sch. 2 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I304 Sch. 2 para. 2 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(w\)](#)

Duty to lay transfer schemes before Senedd Cymru

- 3 The Welsh Ministers must lay a copy of a transfer scheme made under this Schedule before Senedd Cymru.

Commencement Information

- I305** Sch. 2 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I306 Sch. 2 para. 3 in force at 4.9.2023 by [S.I. 2023/919](#), [art. 2\(w\)](#)

Interpretation

- 4 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule—
- (a) an individual who holds employment in the civil service is to be treated as employed by virtue of a contract of employment, and
- (b) the terms of the individual’s employment in the civil service are to be regarded as constituting the terms of the contract of employment.
- (2) In this Schedule—
- “civil service” (“*gwasanaeth sifil*”) means the civil service of the State;
- “TUPE regulations” (“*rheoliadau TUPE*”) means the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006 ([SI 2006/246](#));
- references to rights and liabilities include rights and liabilities relating to a contract of employment;
- references to the transfer of property include the grant of a lease.

Commencement Information

- I307** Sch. 2 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

I308 Sch. 2 para. 4 in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, art. 2(w)

PROSPECTIVE

SCHEDULE 3

(introduced by section 56)

ASSESSING HIGHER EDUCATION: DESIGNATED BODY

PART 1

DESIGNATION

Designation

- 1 (1) The Commission may designate a body to exercise its assessment functions.
- (2) The Commission may designate a body under sub-paragraph (1) only if it considers that—
 - (a) the body is suitable to exercise the assessment functions, and
 - (b) designating the body would be appropriate for securing the effective assessment of the quality of higher education provided by tertiary education providers in Wales.
- (3) Before designating a body, the Commission must—
 - (a) obtain the consent of the Welsh Ministers, and
 - (b) consult—
 - (i) each registered provider providing higher education, and
 - (ii) such other persons as it considers appropriate.
- (4) If the Commission decides to designate a body under sub-paragraph (1) it must—
 - (a) notify the body of the designation before the date on which the designation takes effect (“the effective date”), and
 - (b) publish notice of the designation before that date.
- (5) The notice of the designation must state—
 - (a) the name of the body, and
 - (b) the effective date.
- (6) If the Welsh Ministers do not give their consent under sub-paragraph (3)(a), they must publish the reasons for not doing so.

Commencement Information

I309 Sch. 3 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 148(2)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Bodies suitable to exercise assessment functions

- 2 (1) A body is suitable to exercise the assessment functions if the body satisfies the conditions in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) The conditions are—
- (a) that the body is capable of exercising the assessment functions in an effective manner,
 - (b) the persons who determine the strategic priorities of the body represent a broad range of registered providers providing higher education,
 - (c) the body commands the confidence of registered providers providing higher education,
 - (d) the body exercises its functions independent of any particular higher education provider, and
 - (e) the body consents to being designated under this Schedule.

Commencement Information

I310 Sch. 3 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Removal of designation

- 3 (1) The Commission may by notice remove a designation under this Schedule.
- (2) The notice must—
- (a) include the reasons for the Commission’s decision, and
 - (b) specify the date on which the designation is removed.
- (3) The Commission may remove a designation only if—
- (a) the Commission is satisfied that removing the designation would be appropriate for securing the effective assessment of the quality of higher education provided by tertiary education providers in Wales, or
 - (b) the designated body consents to the removal of the designation.
- (4) Unless sub-paragraph (3)(b) applies, the Commission must, before removing the designation—
- (a) obtain the consent of the Welsh Ministers, and
 - (b) consult—
 - (i) each registered provider providing higher education, and
 - (ii) such other persons as it considers appropriate.
- (5) The Commission must publish a notice under this paragraph.
- (6) If the Welsh Ministers do not give their consent under sub-paragraph (4)(a), they must publish the reasons for not doing so.

Commencement Information

I311 Sch. 3 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PART 2

OVERSIGHT BY THE COMMISSION

Application

- 4 This Part applies if there is a body designated under this Schedule to exercise the assessment functions.

Commencement Information

I312 Sch. 3 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Power to provide funding

- 5 The Commission may provide funding to the designated body for exercising the assessment functions.

Commencement Information

I313 Sch. 3 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Oversight arrangements

- 6 The Commission must make arrangements for holding the designated body to account for the exercise of the assessment functions.

Commencement Information

I314 Sch. 3 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Annual report by the designated body

- 7 (1) As soon as reasonably practicable after the end of each annual reporting period, the designated body must prepare and send to the Commission a report about the exercise of the assessment functions during the period.

- (2) “Annual reporting period”, in relation to a designated body, means—
- (a) the period of 12 months beginning with the effective date, and
 - (b) each successive period of 12 months.

Commencement Information

I315 Sch. 3 para. 7 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Power of the Commission to give directions

- 8 (1) The Commission may give the designated body general directions about the exercise of the assessment functions.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In giving such directions, the Commission must have regard to the need to protect—
 - (a) the expertise of the designated body, and
 - (b) the designated body’s ability to make, or make arrangements for, an impartial assessment of the quality of higher education provided by a tertiary education provider.
- (3) The directions must relate—
 - (a) to tertiary education providers in Wales providing higher education or registered providers providing higher education generally, or
 - (b) a description of such providers.
- (4) The designated body must comply with any directions given under this paragraph.

Commencement Information

I316 Sch. 3 para. 8 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Duty of the Commission to inform the Welsh Ministers about significant concerns

- 9 The Commission must inform the Welsh Ministers if it has significant concerns about—
- (a) how the designated body is exercising the assessment functions, or
 - (b) the continued suitability of the designated body to exercise those functions.

Commencement Information

I317 Sch. 3 para. 9 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PART 3

POWER TO CHARGE FEES

- 10 (1) The designated body may charge a fee, or fees, to any tertiary education provider in relation to which the body exercises the assessment functions.
- (2) Any fees charged by the designated body under sub-paragraph (1) must be charged in accordance with a scheme prepared and published by the designated body that sets out—
- (a) the fees which the body charges under sub-paragraph (1), and
 - (b) the basis on which such fees are calculated.
- (3) The amount of a fee payable by any tertiary education provider under sub-paragraph (1) may be calculated by reference to costs incurred, or to be incurred, by the body in the exercise of any of its functions under this Act which—
- (a) are unconnected with the provider;
 - (b) are exercised, or are to be exercised, over a period specified in the scheme.
- (4) But the total fees payable under the scheme in any period must not exceed the cost to the designated body of exercising its functions under this Act during the same period.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (4), the cost to the designated body of exercising its functions under this Act is the amount of the costs incurred, or to be incurred, by the designated body in the exercise of any of its functions under this Act in any given period less any funding received by the body under paragraph 5 of this Schedule in the same period.
- (6) The designated body may revise the scheme.
- (7) The scheme (and any revised scheme) is to be treated as having effect only if approved by the Commission.

Commencement Information

I318 Sch. 3 para. 10 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PART 4

INTERPRETATION

- 11 (1) In this Schedule—
- “the assessment functions” (“*y swyddogaethau asesu*”) has the meaning given in section 56(2);
- “designated body” (“*corff dynodedig*”) means a body for the time being designated under this Schedule;
- “the effective date” (“*y dyddiad effeithiol*”), in relation to a designated body, has the meaning given in paragraph 1;
- (2) References in this Schedule to a body that is suitable to exercise the assessment functions are to be read in accordance with paragraph 2.

Commencement Information

I319 Sch. 3 para. 11 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

SCHEDULE 4

(introduced by section 147)

MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

PROSPECTIVE

Employment and Training Act 1973 (c. 50)

- 1 (1) The Employment and Training Act 1973 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 8 (careers services), in subsection (4), for paragraph (a) substitute—
- “(a) as respects Wales as references to a tertiary education provider registered under section 25 of the Tertiary Education and Research

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(Wales) Act 2022 to provide higher education, other than a provider which is also an institution within the further education sector (within the meaning given by section 91(3) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992) or a school (within the meaning given by section 4 of the Education Act 1996), and”.

Commencement Information

I320 Sch. 4 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Education (Fees and Awards) Act 1983 (c. 40)

- 2 (1) The Education (Fees and Awards) Act 1983 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 1 (fees at universities, further education institutions etc.), in subsection (3)
- (a) omit paragraph (ee);
 - (b) in paragraph (g), for “National Assembly for Wales” substitute “Welsh Ministers or the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.

Commencement Information

I321 Sch. 4 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I322 Sch. 4 para. 2 in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(k\)\(i\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (c. 61)

- 3 (1) The Education (No. 2) Act 1986 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 43 (freedom of speech in universities, etc.)—
- (a) in subsection (5), for paragraph (aa) substitute—
 - “(aa) a tertiary education provider registered under section 25 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 to provide higher education, other than an institution within paragraph (a) or (ba) or a school;”;
 - (b) in subsection (6), for paragraph (b) substitute—
 - “(b) in relation to an institution in Wales within the higher education sector or the further education sector has the meaning given by section 90(1) of the [Further and Higher Education Act 1992 \(c. 13\)](#), but subject to any provision made by virtue of section 90(2) of that Act;”.

Commencement Information

I323 Sch. 4 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I324 Sch. 4 para. 3(1)(2)(b) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(k\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PROSPECTIVE

Employment Act 1988 (c. 19)

- 4 (1) The Employment Act 1988 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 26 (status of trainees etc.), in subsection (1A), for “under section 34(1) (c) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000” substitute “or the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research under section 97(1)(d) or (e) of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”.

Commencement Information

I325 Sch. 4 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Education Reform Act 1988 (c. 40)

- 5 (1) The Education Reform Act 1988 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 120 (powers of local authorities with respect to higher education), after subsection (4) insert—
- “(4A) In exercising its powers under subsection (3) a local authority must have regard to the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research’s strategic plan approved under section 15 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022.”
- (3) In section 124B (accounts), in subsection (2)(b), for “the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.
- (4) In section 129 (designation of institutions)—
- (a) in subsection (1)—
- (i) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers”;
- (ii) for “as an institution eligible to receive support from funds administered by the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “for the purposes of this section”;
- (iii) in paragraph (a) for “him” substitute “them”;
- (iv) in paragraphs (a) and (b) after “institution” insert “in Wales”;
- (b) in subsection (5)(d), for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers”.
- (5) In section 133 (payments in respect of persons employed in the provision of higher or further education), in subsection (1)—
- (a) for “and the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales each have” substitute “has”;
- (b) for “they think” substitute “it thinks”;
- (c) in paragraph (a) for “their” substitute “its”.
- (6) In section 198 (transfers), in subsection (5), for “the higher education funding council” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (7) In Schedule 7 (higher education corporations in Wales established before the appointed day), in paragraph 18(2)(b), for “the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.

Commencement Information

I326 Sch. 4 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I327 Sch. 4 para. 5 in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(k\)\(iii\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13)

- 6 (1) The Further and Higher Education Act 1992 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 49B (destination information)—
- (a) in subsection (2) for “The Welsh Ministers” substitute “The Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”;
 - (b) in subsection (4) for “the Welsh Ministers” in the first place where it occurs substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.
- (3) Omit—
- (a) section 57 (intervention: Wales);
 - (b) section 62 (establishment of the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales);
 - (c) section 65 (administration of funds by the HEFCW);
 - (d) section 66 (administration of funds: supplementary);
 - (e) section 68 (grants to the HEFCW);
 - (f) section 69 (supplementary functions);
 - (g) section 79 (duty to give information to HEFCW);
 - (h) section 81 (directions).
- (4) In section 83 (efficiency studies), in the table in subsection (1B) omit the entries for “the Welsh Ministers” and “the HEFCW”.
- (5) In section 91 (interpretation)—
- (a) omit subsection (4);
 - (b) in subsection (5)—
 - (i) for paragraphs (a) and (aa) substitute—
 - “(a) tertiary education providers registered in a category specified in regulations made for the purposes of section 88 or 105 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022, other than providers that are also institutions within the further education sector or schools,”;
 - (ii) in paragraph (b) after “in Wales” insert “, other than ones falling within paragraph (a),”;
 - (iii) in paragraph (c) after “Act)” insert “, other than institutions falling within paragraph (a),”;
 - (c) omit subsection (5A).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(6) In section 92 (index), omit the entries for “the HEFCW” and “institution in Wales (in relation to the HEFCW)”.

(7) Omit Schedule 1 (the Further and Higher Education Funding Councils).

Commencement Information

I328 Sch. 4 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I329 Sch. 4 para. 6(1)(2)(3)(e)(g)(5)(a)(7) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 2\(k\)\(iv\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

I330 Sch. 4 para. 6(3)(b) in force at 1.8.2024 for specified purposes by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 3\(c\)\(i\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

I331 Sch. 4 para. 6(3)(f) in force at 1.8.2024 for specified purposes by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 3\(c\)\(ii\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

I332 Sch. 4 para. 6(6) in force at 1.8.2024 for specified purposes by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 3\(c\)\(iii\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Education Act 1994 (c. 30)

7 (1) The Education Act 1994 is amended as follows.

(2) In section 18 (power to reimburse certain payments to persons formerly employed in teacher training)—

(a) in subsection (1)—

- (i) omit “or the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales”;
- (ii) for “they think” substitute “it thinks”;

(b) in subsection (4)—

- (i) omit “or (as the case may be) the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales”;
- (ii) for “they” substitute “it” and for “their” substitute “its”.

(3) In section 18C (inspection of teacher training in Wales)—

(a) in subsection (3) for paragraph (b) substitute—

“(b) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research, or”;

(b) in subsection (12) omit paragraph (b).

(4) In section 21 (establishments to which Part 2 on students’ unions applies)—

(a) in subsection (1)—

- (i) in paragraph (a) for “section 65 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992” substitute “section 88 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”;
- (ii) in paragraph (b) for “that Act” substitute “the Further and Higher Education Act 1992”;
- (iii) in paragraph (c) omit “as eligible to receive support from funds administered by a higher education funding council”;
- (iv) after paragraph (d) insert—
 - “(da) any institution in Wales designated under section 28 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992”.

(b) in subsection (2A) for “has the meaning given by section 62(7) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992” substitute “means an institution whose activities are wholly or mainly carried out in Wales”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.
Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I333 Sch. 4 para. 7 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I334 Sch. 4 para. 7(1)-(3)(4)(a)(iii)(iv)(b) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, **art. 2(k)(v)** (with **art. 28**)

Education Act 1996 (c. 56)

- 8 (1) The Education Act 1996 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 13 (general responsibility for education), in subsection (2) for paragraphs (aa) and (b) substitute—
“(ba) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research, or”.
- (3) In section 15A (local authority powers in respect of education and training for 16 to 18 year olds), after subsection (3) insert—
“(3A) In exercising its functions under this section a local authority in Wales must also have regard to the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research’s strategic plan approved under section 15 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022.”
- (4) In section 15B (local authority powers in respect of education for persons over 19), after subsection (3)(b) insert—
“(c) a local authority in Wales must also have regard to the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research’s strategic plan approved under section 15 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022.”
- (5) Omit section 484 (education standard grants).
- (6) In section 489 (conditions as to payment of grants)—
(a) in subsection (1) for “under any of sections 484 to 488” substitute “section 485”;
(b) omit subsection (2);
(c) in the heading for “sections 484 to 488” substitute “section 485”.
- (7) In section 508 (local authority functions in respect of facilities for recreation and social and physical training), after subsection (3) insert—
“(4) In exercising its functions under this section a local authority must have regard to the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research’s strategic plan approved under section 15 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022.”
- (8) In section 530 (compulsory purchase of land), in subsection (3) in paragraph (b) omit “(including that paragraph as applied by section 76(3) of that Act)”.
- (9) In section 580 (index), omit the entry for “grants for education support and training”.
- (10) In Schedule 36A (education functions of local authorities), in the table in paragraph 2 in the entry for the Learning and Skills Act 2000—
(a) in the entry for section 33J, for “Welsh Ministers” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”;
(b) omit the entry for section 83;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) omit the entry for section 84;
- (d) omit the entry for Schedules 7 and 7A.

Commencement Information

I335 Sch. 4 para. 8 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I336 Sch. 4 para. 8(1)(3)(4)(7) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(k\)\(vi\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

PROSPECTIVE

Education Act 1997 (c. 44)

- 9 (1) The Education Act 1997 is amended as follows.
- (2) In Part 6, in the heading to Chapter 1, after “AUTHORITIES”, insert “IN WALES”.
- (3) In section 38 (inspection of local authorities)—
- (a) in subsection (1)—
 - (i) in paragraph (b), for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers or the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research (“the Commission)”
 - (ii) after “authority”, insert “in Wales”;
 - (b) after subsection (2A) insert—

“(2B) Where the Commission has made a request under subsection (1) (b), the review mentioned in subsection (2A) is to be of the way that the local authority is performing the functions mentioned in subsection (2A)(a) and (b) in so far as those functions relate to further education and training within the meaning of section 144(2) to (5) of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022.”;
 - (c) in subsection (3), for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers or the Commission”;
 - (d) in subsection (4), for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers or the Commission”;
 - (e) in subsection (6), after “authority”, insert “in Wales”;
 - (f) in the heading, after “authorities”, insert “in Wales”.
- (4) In section 39 (report of inspection of local authority and action plan), in subsection (1) —
- (a) omit the “and” at the end of paragraph (a);
 - (b) for paragraph (b) substitute—
 - “(b) the Welsh Ministers, and
 - (c) where the matters reviewed relate to further education and training within the meaning of section 144(2) to (5) of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022, the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I337 Sch. 4 para. 9 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (c. 30)

- 10 Omit section 27 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (expenditure eligible for funding).

Commencement Information

I338 Sch. 4 para. 10 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31)

- 11 (1) The School Standards and Framework Act 1998 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 49 (maintained schools to have delegated budgets), in subsection (6), in paragraph (b) omit “section 75(2)(b) of”.
- (3) In Part 1 of Schedule 22 (disposals of land: foundation and voluntary schools in Wales)—
- (a) in paragraph 1, in sub-paragraph (1)(aa) omit “, under that paragraph as applied by section 76(1) of that Act”;
 - (b) in paragraph 2, in sub-paragraph (1)(aa) omit “, under either of those paragraphs as applied by section 76(1) or (3) of that Act”;
 - (c) in paragraph 2A, in sub-paragraph (1)(aa) omit “, under that paragraph as applied by section 76(1) of that Act”;
 - (d) in paragraph 3, in sub-paragraph (1)(aa) omit “, under those paragraphs as applied by section 76(1) or (3) of that Act”.
- (4) In Schedule 30 (minor and consequential amendments), omit paragraphs 125 and 126.

Commencement Information

I339 Sch. 4 para. 11 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Government of Wales Act 1998 (c.38)

- 12 (1) The Government of Wales Act 1998 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 145B (studies in relation to educational bodies)—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) in subsection (1), in the Table—
 - (i) in the entry for the governing body of an institution in Wales within the higher education sector, in the second column, for “the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”;
 - (ii) omit the entry for a governing body receiving financial support under section 86 of the Education Act 2005;
 - (iii) in the entry for a governing body of an institution in Wales within the further education sector, in the second column, for “or the Assembly” substitute “, the Commission or the Welsh Ministers”;
 - (b) in subsection (4), for “the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research” and for “the council” substitute “the Commission”.
- (3) In Part 3 of Schedule 4 (bodies subject to reform), omit paragraph 16.
- (4) In Part 1 of Schedule 17 (bodies subject generally to audit etc. provisions)—
- (a) in paragraph 1 omit “or III”;
 - (b) after paragraph 11 insert—
 - “11A The Commission for Tertiary Education and Research.”

Commencement Information

I340 Sch. 4 para. 12 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I341 Sch. 4 para. 12(1)(2)(a)(ii)(3)(4) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 2\(k\)\(vii\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

I342 Sch. 4 para. 12(2)(a)(i) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 11\(1\)](#) (with [art. 11\(2\)](#))

I343 Sch. 4 para. 12(2)(b) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 12\(1\)](#) (with [art. 12\(2\)](#))

PROSPECTIVE

Care Standards Act 2000 (c. 14)

- 13 (1) The Care Standards Act 2000 is amended as follows.
- (2) In Schedule 2A (persons subject to review by the Children’s Commissioner for Wales)—
- (a) for paragraph 7, substitute—
 - “7 Any tertiary education provider (other than one within paragraph 5, 6, 8 or 9) that is registered in a category specified in regulations made for the purposes of section 88 or 105 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022.”
 - (b) after paragraph 8 insert—
 - “8A The Commission for Tertiary Education and Research.”
- (3) In Schedule 2B (persons whose arrangements are subject to review by the Children’s Commissioner for Wales), after paragraph 10 insert—
- “11 The Commission for Tertiary Education and Research.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I344 Sch. 4 para. 13 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 148(2)

Learning and Skills Act 2000 (c. 21)

- 14 (1) The Learning and Skills Act 2000 is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit sections 31 to 33 (main duties in relation to post 16 education and training).
- (3) In section 33A (formation of local curricula for students aged 16 to 18)—
- (a) in subsection (1) for “The Welsh Ministers” substitute “The Commission”;
 - (b) in subsection (2)(b) for “the Welsh Ministers” substitute “the Commission”.
- (4) In section 33B (local curricula: Welsh language) for “The Welsh Ministers” substitute “The Commission” and for “their” substitute “its”.
- (5) In section 33C (areas with more than one local curriculum)—
- (a) in subsection (1) for “the Welsh Ministers form” substitute “the Commission forms”;
 - (b) in subsection (2) for “the Welsh Ministers” substitute “the Commission”.
- (6) In section 33D (determination of a pupil’s relevant school or institution), after subsection (3) insert—
- “(3A) The Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission before making regulations under subsection (3).”
- (7) In section 33E (pupils’ choice of local curriculum courses)—
- (a) after subsection (3) insert—
- “(3A) The Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission before making regulations under subsection (3).”;
- (b) in subsection (4) for “the Welsh Ministers have” in each place substitute “the Commission has”.
- (8) In section 33G (head teacher’s or principal’s decision as to entitlement), after subsection (5) insert—
- “(6) The Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission before making regulations under subsection (3), giving guidance under subsection (4) or making an order under subsection (5).”
- (9) In section 33I (head teacher’s or principal’s decision to remove entitlement), after subsection (5) insert—
- “(6) The Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission before making regulations under subsection (3), giving guidance under subsection (4) or making an order under subsection (5).”
- (10) In section 33J (planning the local curriculum)—
- (a) in subsection (1) for “the Welsh Ministers” substitute “the Commission”;
 - (b) in subsection (2) for “the Welsh Ministers decide” substitute “the Commission decides”;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) omit subsections (3) and (4).
- (11) In section 33K (delivery of local curriculum entitlements: joint working), in subsection (6) for “the Welsh Ministers have” in each place substitute “the Commission has”.
- (12) In section 33L (joint working: guidance and directions), after subsection (2) insert—
- “(2A) The Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission before giving guidance under subsection (1).”
- (13) In section 33M (power to amend learning domains), the existing text becomes subsection (1) and after that subsection insert—
- “(2) The Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission before making an order under subsection (1).”
- (14) In section 33N (the local curriculum: interpretation), in subsection (1)—
- (a) for “33L” substitute “33M”;
- (b) after the definition of “academic year” insert—
- ““the Commission” means the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research;”.
- (15) In section 33O (local curriculum: directions), omit “, 33J(3)”.
- (16) In section 33P (application of local curriculum provisions to students who are registered pupils of special schools or who have additional learning needs)—
- (a) in subsection (1) after “Regulations” insert “made by the Welsh Ministers”;
- (b) after subsection (3) insert—
- “(4) The Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research before making regulations under subsection (1).”
- (17) In section 33Q (application of local curriculum provisions to institutions within the higher education sector)—
- (a) in subsection (1) after “Regulations” insert “made by the Welsh Ministers”;
- (b) after subsection (3) insert—
- “(4) The Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research before making regulations under subsection (1).”
- (18) Omit sections 34 to 38 (main powers).
- (19) In section 40 (research and information), omit subsections (5) and (6).
- (20) Omit section 41 (persons with additional learning needs).
- (21) In section 73 (inspectors of education and training in Wales), omit subsections (1) and (2).
- (22) In section 74 (defined terms), in subsection (2) for “the person mentioned in section 73(1)” substitute “Her Majesty’s Chief Inspector of Education and Training in Wales or Prif Arolygydd Ei Mawrhydi dros Addysg a Hyfforddiant yng Nghymru”.
- (23) Omit sections 75 to 80 and 83 to 88 (inspections in Wales).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (24) In section 125 (consultation in connection with provision of youth support services), in subsection (2), after paragraph (a) insert—
“(aa) consult the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research.”
- (25) In section 126 (educational institutions: information and access), in subsection (3) in paragraph (f) for “National Assembly for Wales in the discharge of its functions under Part 2” substitute “Commission for Tertiary Education and Research under section 97 or 104 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”.
- (26) In section 138 (Wales: provision of information by public bodies), in subsection (3) after paragraph (c) insert—
“(ca) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research.”
- (27) In section 144 (designated institutions: disposal of land, etc.)—
(a) in subsection (4A), in paragraph (b) for “the Welsh Ministers” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”;
(b) in subsection (9), in paragraph (b) for “the National Assembly for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.

Commencement Information

I345 Sch. 4 para. 14 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I346 Sch. 4 para. 14(1)(24)(26) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 2\(k\)\(viii\)](#) (with art. 28)

I347 Sch. 4 para. 14(27) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 13\(1\)](#) (with art. 13(2))

Education Act 2002 (c. 32)

- 15 (1) The Education Act 2002 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 18 (repeal of specific grant-making powers), omit subsection (2).
- (3) In section 28A (power of governing body to provide higher education), in subsection (3) for “The National Assembly for Wales” substitute “The Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.
- (4) In section 140 (further education: general)—
(a) in subsection (3), in the definition of “higher education institution”, for “section 65 of the [Further and Higher Education Act 1992 \(c. 13\)](#) (administration of funds by higher education funding councils)” substitute “section 88 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”;
(b) omit subsections (4) and (5).
- (5) In section 145 (specification of qualification or course), in subsections (1)(c) and (3) for “the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.
- (6) In section 178 (training and education provided in the workplace for 14 to 16 year olds), omit subsections (1) and (4).
- (7) In Schedule 21 (minor and consequential amendments), omit paragraphs 49 and 125.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I348 Sch. 4 para. 15 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I349 Sch. 4 para. 15(1)(3)(5) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 2\(k\)\(ix\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

PROSPECTIVE

Higher Education Act 2004 (c. 8)

- 16 (1) The Higher Education Act 2004 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 11 (qualifying institutions), in subsection (1) (as renumbered by section 128(2)(a)), in paragraph (a) for “section 65 of the 1992 Act” substitute “Part 3 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”.
- (3) In section 20A (institutions that cease to be qualifying institutions), in subsection (4) for “section 11” substitute “subsection (1) of section 11, or a qualifying institution specified in regulations made under subsection (2) of that section,”.

Commencement Information

I350 Sch. 4 para. 16 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

Children Act 2004 (c. 31)

- 17 (1) The Children Act 2004 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 25 (co-operation to improve well-being: Wales), in subsection (4) for paragraph (f) substitute—
 “(f) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research;”.
- (3) In section 29 (information databases), in subsection (7) for paragraph (b) substitute—
 “(b) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research;”.

Commencement Information

I351 Sch. 4 para. 17 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Education Act 2005 (c. 18)

- 18 (1) The Education Act 2005 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 20 (functions on Chief Inspector), in subsection (7) for “which is brought within the remit of the Chief Inspector by Part 4 of the [Learning and Skills Act 2000 \(c. 21\)](#)” substitute “to which the functions of the Chief Inspector under Part 2 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 apply”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) In section 24 (power of Chief Inspector to arrange for inspections), in subsection (6) for “brought within the remit of the Chief Inspector by Part 4 of the [Learning and Skills Act 2000 \(c. 21\)](#)” substitute “to which the functions of the Chief Inspector under Part 2 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 apply”.
- (4) In section 28 (duty to arrange regular inspections of certain schools), in paragraph (a) of subsection (7) for “which is brought within the remit of the Chief Inspector by Part 4 of the [Learning and Skills Act 2000 \(c. 21\)](#)” substitute “to which the functions of the Chief Inspector under Part 2 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 apply”.
- (5) In section 44C (report after area inspection on schools with sixth forms requiring significant improvement), in subsection (1) for “section 83 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000” substitute “section 63 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”.
- (6) In section 44D (copies of report and action plan), in subsection (3)—
 - (a) for “paragraph” substitute “section”;
 - (b) in paragraph (a), for “38(2)” substitute “38(3)”.
- (7) In section 44E (report on sixth form schools causing concern after area inspection), in subsection (1) for “section 83 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000” substitute “section 63 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”.
- (8) Omit sections 85 to 91 (Higher Education Funding Council for Wales’ functions in relation to teacher training).
- (9) In section 92 (joint exercise of functions)—
 - (a) in subsection (1) omit “, HEFCW”;
 - (b) in subsection (2) omit “or the Assembly to the extent that it is discharging its functions under Part 2 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000”;
 - (c) omit subsection (4).
- (10) In section 93 (efficiency studies)—
 - (a) in subsection (1) omit “and HEFCW”;
 - (b) in subsection (2) omit “or HEFCW”;
 - (c) in subsection (3) omit paragraph (b) and the “or” preceding it.
- (11) In section 94 (provision of information)—
 - (a) omit subsections (1) and (2);
 - (b) in subsection (3) omit paragraph (b);
 - (c) in subsection (4), in paragraph (a) omit “, a grant, loan or other payment under section 86, or”.
- (12) Omit section 97 (institutions of a denominational character).
- (13) In section 100 (interpretation of Part 3)—
 - (a) in subsection (1) omit the definitions of “the Chief Inspector for Wales”, “denominational character”, “governing body” and “HEFCW”;
 - (b) omit subsection (2).
- (14) In Schedule 9 (amendments relating to school inspection), omit paragraphs 24 and 25.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(15) In Schedule 18 (further amendments), omit paragraph 13.

Commencement Information

I352 Sch. 4 para. 18 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I353 Sch. 4 para. 18(1)(6)(8)(9)(a)(c)(10)-(13) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(k\)\(x\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Commissioner for Older People (Wales) Act 2006 (c. 30)

- 19 (1) The Commissioner for Older People (Wales) Act 2006 is amended as follows.
- (2) In Schedule 2 (persons whose functions are subject to review under section 3), under the sub-heading “Education and training”—
- (a) for “The Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “The Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”;
 - (b) for “an institution in Wales falling within section 91(5)(a) of the [Further and Higher Education Act 1992 \(c. 13\)](#)” substitute “a tertiary education provider (other than one mentioned elsewhere in this Schedule) that is registered in a category specified in regulations made for the purposes of section 88 or 105 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”.
- (3) In Schedule 3 (persons whose arrangements are subject to review under section 5), under the sub-heading “Education and training”, for “an institution in Wales falling within section 91(5)(a) of the [Further and Higher Education Act 1992 \(c. 13\)](#)” substitute “a tertiary education provider (other than one mentioned elsewhere in this Schedule) that is registered in a category specified in regulations made for the purposes of section 88 or 105 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”.

Commencement Information

I354 Sch. 4 para. 19 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I355 Sch. 4 para. 19(1)(2)(a) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(k\)\(xi\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Government of Wales Act 2006 (c. 32)

- 20 (1) The Government of Wales Act 2006 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 148 (meaning of Welsh public records), in subsection (2)—
- (a) after paragraph (a), insert—
 - “(aa) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research,”;
 - (b) omit paragraph (h).
- (3) In Schedule 11 (transitional provisions), in paragraph 35, in sub-paragraph (4), in Table 2—
- (a) omit the entries relating to sections 77(4) and 83(7) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000;
 - (b) in the entry relating to section 128(4)(b) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000 for “that Act” substitute “the [Learning and Skills Act 2000 \(c. 21\)](#)”;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) omit the entries relating to sections 85(3)(d), 90(1), 91(1), 92(4) and 100(2) of the Education Act 2005.

Commencement Information

- I356** Sch. 4 para. 20 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)
I357 Sch. 4 para. 20(1) in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, [art. 2\(x\)\(i\)](#)
I358 Sch. 4 para. 20(2)(a) in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, [art. 2\(x\)\(ii\)](#)
I359 Sch. 4 para. 20(2)(b) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 2\(k\)\(xii\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

PROSPECTIVE

Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 (c. 47)

- 21 (1) The Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 is amended as follows.
- (2) In Schedule 4 (regulated activities relating to children), in paragraph 1, after subparagraph (9B)(i) insert—
- “(ia) an inspection under section 57, 58, 59, 60 or 63 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 (inspection of further education and training, etc. by Her Majesty’s Chief Inspector of Education and Training in Wales);”.
- (3) In Schedule 7, in paragraph 1, in the table, in entry 18, for “section 34(1) of the [Learning and Skills Act 2000 \(c. 21\)](#)” substitute “section 88(1) or (2), 89(3), 92(1), 97(1) or (7), 103(1) or (2), 104(1)(a) or 136(1) of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”.

Commencement Information

- I360** Sch. 4 para. 21 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Education and Skills Act 2008 (c. 25)

- 22 (1) The Education and Skills Act 2008 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 66 (interpretation), in subsection (1), in the definition of “apprenticeship agreement”—
- (a) omit the words “an apprenticeship agreement within the meaning given in section 32 of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 or”;
- (b) for “that Act” substitute “the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009”.
- (3) In section 91 (information: supplementary), in subsection (3) after paragraph (b) insert—
- “(c) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I361 Sch. 4 para. 22 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I362 Sch. 4 para. 22(1)(3) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, [art. 2\(k\)\(xiii\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

PROSPECTIVE

Learner Travel (Wales) Measure 2008 (nawm 2)

- 23 (1) The Learner Travel (Wales) Measure 2008 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 1 (main terms used in the Measure), in subsection (4)(g) for “the Welsh Ministers under section 34(1) of the [Learning and Skills Act 2000 \(c. 21\)](#)” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research or the Welsh Ministers under section 97 of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”.
- (3) In section 7 (travel arrangements for learners in post-16 education or training)—
- (a) in subsection (1)(b)(ii) after “funded by” insert “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research or”;
 - (b) in subsection (3)(a) before sub-paragraph (i) insert—
 - “(ai) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research;”.

Commencement Information

I363 Sch. 4 para. 23 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 (c. 22)

- 24 (1) The Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit—
- (a) section 2 (meaning of completing Welsh apprenticeship);
 - (b) sections 7 to 12 (apprenticeship certificates and frameworks);
 - (c) sections 18 to 22 (apprenticeship frameworks);
 - (d) sections 28 to 36 (apprenticeship standards and agreements);
 - (e) sections 38 and 39 (apprenticeship sectors and interpretation).
- (3) In section 262 (orders and regulations), in subsection (9), omit “under Chapter 1 of Part 1 (other than an order under section 10) or”.

Commencement Information

I364 Sch. 4 para. 24 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Learning and Skills (Wales) Measure 2009 (nawm 1)

- 25 (1) The Learning and Skills (Wales) Measure 2009 is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit section 21 (education and training for persons aged 16 to 18).
- (3) In section 43 (the learning pathway document), after subsection (6) insert—
- “(7) The Welsh Ministers must consult the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research before giving guidance under subsection (6).”
- (4) In the Schedule (minor and consequential amendments), omit paragraphs 1 to 9.

Commencement Information

I365 Sch. 4 para. 25 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I366 Sch. 4 para. 25(1)(3) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, **art. 2(k)(xiv)** (with art. 28)

PROSPECTIVE

Equality Act 2010 (c. 15)

- 26 (1) The Equality Act 2010 is amended as follows.
- (2) In Schedule 26 (amendments), omit paragraph 23.

Commencement Information

I367 Sch. 4 para. 26 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

Children and Families (Wales) Measure 2010 (nawm 1)

- 27 In section 6 of the Children and Families (Wales) Measure 2010 (meaning of Welsh authority), in subsection (1)(g), for “the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.

Commencement Information

I368 Sch. 4 para. 27 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I369 Sch. 4 para. 27 in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, **art. 2(k)(xv)** (with art. 28)

Welsh Language (Wales) Measure 2011 (nawm 1)

- 28 In Schedule 6 to the Welsh Language (Wales) Measure 2011 (persons liable to be required to comply with standards: public bodies etc), in the table under the heading “General”—
- (a) insert at the appropriate place—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

TABLE 1

"The Commission for Tertiary Education and Research (“Y Comisiwn Addysg Drydyddol ac Ymchwil”)	Service delivery standards Policy making standards Operational Standards Record keeping standards"
(b) omit the entry relating to the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales.	

Commencement Information

I370 Sch. 4 para. 28 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I371 Sch. 4 para. 28(a) in force at 4.9.2023 by S.I. 2023/919, **art. 2(x)(iii)**

I372 Sch. 4 para. 28(b) in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, **art. 2(k)(xvi)** (with art. 28)

PROSPECTIVE

School Standards and Organisation (Wales) Act 2013 (anaw 1)

- 29 (1) The School Standards and Organisation (Wales) Act 2013 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 1 (overview)—
- (a) after subsection (9) insert—
- “(9A) Chapter 3A provides for powers for the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research to restructure sixth form education.”;
- (b) omit subsection (11).
- (3) In section 38 (school organisation code)—
- (a) in subsection (2), after paragraph (c) insert—
- “(ca) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research;”;
- (b) in subsection (5), at the end of paragraph (c) omit “or” and after that paragraph insert—
- “(ca) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research, or”.
- (4) In section 39 (making and approval of school organisation code), in subsection (1), at the end of paragraph (c) omit “and” and after that paragraph insert—
- “(ca) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research, and”.
- (5) In section 50 (approval by Welsh Ministers), in subsection (1) after “education” insert “and an objection has been made to the proposals in accordance with section 49(2) and has not been withdrawn in writing before the end of 28 days beginning with the end of the objection period”.
- (6) In section 61 (local inquiry into proposals)—
- (a) in subsection (4) for “70 and 73” substitute “63F, 63G and 70”;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) in subsection (6) in paragraph (d) for “68 or 71” substitute “63C or 68”;
 - (c) in subsection (8) for “the direction under section 57(2)” substitute “a direction under section 57(2) or 63A(1)”;
 - (d) in subsection (9)—
 - (i) in paragraph (a) for “70 or 73” substitute “63F or 70”;
 - (ii) in paragraph (b) after “53” insert “or 63G”.
- (7) After section 63 insert—

“CHAPTER 3A

PROPOSALS FOR RESTRUCTURING SIXTH FORM PROVISION

63A Directions by the Commission to make sixth form proposals

- (1) The Commission may, in accordance with the Code—
 - (a) direct a local authority to exercise its powers to make proposals to—
 - (i) establish or discontinue a school providing education suitable only to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age, or
 - (ii) make an alteration described in Schedule 2 to a school, the effect of which would be that provision of education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age at the school increases or decreases.
 - (b) direct the governing body of a foundation or voluntary school to exercise its powers to make an alteration described in Schedule 2 to a school, the effect of which would be that provision of education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age at the school increases or decreases.
- (2) A direction under subsection (1) must—
 - (a) require the proposals to be published no later than the date specified in the direction, and
 - (b) require the proposals, in giving effect to the direction, to apply any principles specified in it.

63B Further provision about proposals made after a direction under section 63A(1)

- (1) Proposals made in accordance with a direction under section 63A(1) may not be withdrawn without the consent of the Commission.
- (2) The Commission may give consent for the purposes of subsection (1) subject to conditions.
- (3) A local authority must reimburse expenditure reasonably incurred by a governing body of a school maintained by it in making proposals in accordance with a direction under section 63A(1).
- (4) Despite anything in Part 1 of Schedule 3 (responsibility for implementation of statutory proposals), a local authority must meet the cost of implementing proposals made by a governing body of a school maintained by it in

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

accordance with a direction under section 63A(1) which have been approved or determined to be implemented.

63C Making of proposals by the Commission

- (1) This section applies where—
 - (a) the Commission has made a direction under section 63A(1), and
 - (b) either—
 - (i) proposals have been published in accordance with the direction, or
 - (ii) the time allowed under the direction for the publication of the proposals has expired.
- (2) The Commission may make any proposals that could have been made in accordance with the direction.
- (3) But the Commission must obtain the consent of the Welsh Ministers before making a proposal to make an alteration described in paragraph 6 of Schedule 2 (opening or closing a school’s sixth form) to a voluntary or foundation school.
- (4) Where the Commission makes proposals under this section, any proposals that have been made by a local authority or governing body and published in accordance with the direction are to be treated as having been withdrawn.

63D Publication of Commission’s proposals and consultation

- (1) The Commission must publish proposals made under section 63C in accordance with the Code.
- (2) Before publishing proposals made under section 63C, the Commission must consult on its proposals in accordance with the Code.
- (3) The requirement to consult does not apply to proposals to discontinue a school which is a small school within the meaning given by section 56.
- (4) Before the end of 7 days beginning with the day on which they were published, the Commission must send copies of the published proposals to—
 - (a) the Welsh Ministers,
 - (b) the local authority that maintains, or that it is proposed will maintain, the school to which the proposals relate, and
 - (c) the governing body (if any) of the school to which the proposals relate.
- (5) The Commission must publish a report on the consultation it has carried out in accordance with the Code.

63E Objections to the Commission’s proposals

- (1) Any person may object to proposals published under section 63D.
- (2) Objections must be sent in writing to the Commission before the end of 28 days beginning with the day on which the proposals were published (“the objection period”).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) The Commission must publish a summary of all objections made in accordance with subsection (2) (and not withdrawn) and its response to those objections before the end of 28 days beginning with the end of the objection period.

63F Approval by Welsh Ministers

- (1) Proposals published by the Commission under section 63D require approval under this section if an objection has been made in accordance with section 63E(2) and has not been withdrawn in writing before the end of 28 days beginning with the end of the objection period.
- (2) Where proposals require approval under this section, the Commission must send a copy of the documents listed in subsection (3) to the Welsh Ministers before the end of 35 days beginning with the end of the objection period.
- (3) The documents are—
 - (a) the report published under section 63D(5),
 - (b) the published proposals,
 - (c) any objections made in accordance with section 63E(2) (and not withdrawn), and
 - (d) where objections have been so made (and not withdrawn), the response published under section 63E(3).
- (4) Where proposals require approval under this section, the Welsh Ministers may—
 - (a) reject the proposals,
 - (b) approve them without modification, or
 - (c) approve them with modifications—
 - (i) after obtaining the consent of the Commission to the modifications, and
 - (ii) after consulting the local authority that maintains, or that it is proposed will maintain, the school to which the proposals relate and the governing body (if any) of the school to which the proposals relate.
- (5) An approval may be expressed to take effect only if an event specified in the approval occurs by a date so specified.
- (6) The Welsh Ministers may, at the request of the Commission, specify a later date by which the event referred to in subsection (5) is to occur.
- (7) Subsection (1) does not prevent proposals from being withdrawn by notice in writing given by the Commission to the Welsh Ministers at any time before they are approved under this section.
- (8) No approval is required under this section for proposals to discontinue a school which is a small school within the meaning given by section 56.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

63G Determination

- (1) Where proposals published under section 63D do not require approval under section 63F, the Commission must determine whether the proposals should be implemented.
- (2) If a determination under subsection (1) is not made before the end of 16 weeks beginning with the end of the objection period, the Commission is to be taken to have withdrawn the proposals.
- (3) Before the end of 7 days beginning with the day of its determination under subsection (1), the Commission must notify the following of the determination—
 - (a) the Welsh Ministers;
 - (b) the local authority that maintains, or that it is proposed will maintain, the school to which the proposals relate;
 - (c) the governing body (if any) of the school to which the proposals relate.

63H Implementation of proposals

- (1) Proposals approved by the Welsh Ministers under section 63F or determined to be implemented by the Commission under section 63G have effect as if they had been approved by the Welsh Ministers under section 50 after having been made—
 - (a) by the local authority under its powers to make proposals to establish, alter or discontinue schools, or
 - (b) in the case of proposals to alter a foundation or voluntary school, by the governing body under its powers to make proposals to alter its school.
- (2) Despite anything in Part 1 of Schedule 3 (responsibility for implementation of statutory proposals), the local authority that maintains the school in question must meet the cost of implementing proposals approved under section 63F or determined to be implemented under section 63G which have effect as mentioned in subsection (1)(b).

63I Interpretation of Chapter 3A

In this Chapter—

“the Code” (“*y Cod*”) means the code on school organisation issued under section 38(1);

“the Commission” (“*y Comisiwn*”) means the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research.”

- (8) Omit sections 71 to 76 (proposals for restructuring sixth form education).
- (9) In section 80 (notice by governing body to discontinue foundation or voluntary school), in subsection (3) for “the Welsh Ministers” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.
- (10) In section 82 (transitional exemption orders for purposes of Equality Act 2010), in subsection (2) for “, 68 or 71” substitute “or 68”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (11) In section 98 (general interpretation and index of defined expressions), in subsection (3)—
- (a) insert in the appropriate place—
““the Commission” (“*y Comisiwn*) in Chapter 3A of Part 3 means the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research;”;
 - (b) in the definition of “the Code” for “Chapter 2” substitute “Chapters 2 and 3A”;
 - (c) in the definition of “objection period” after “Part 3” insert “and in section 63E(2) for the purposes of Chapter 3A of Part 3”.
- (12) In Schedule 2 (regulated alterations)—
- (a) in paragraph 10 (alterations to premises), in sub-paragraph (3)(c)(i), after “59,” insert “63D,”;
 - (b) in paragraph 19 (increase in pupils: special schools), in sub-paragraph (2)(c)(i), after “59,” insert “63D,”.
- (13) In Schedule 5 (minor and consequential amendments), omit paragraphs 2(3) and 20(3).

Commencement Information

I373 Sch. 4 para. 29 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

PROSPECTIVE

Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 (anaw 4)

- 30 (1) The Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 162 (arrangements to promote co-operation: adults with needs for care and support and carers), in subsection (4)—
- (a) in paragraph (g), for “Part 2 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000” substitute “section 92, 97 or 103(1) of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022”;
 - (b) after paragraph (g) insert—
“(ga) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research to the extent that it is discharging functions under section 93, 94, 95, 97 or 103(1) of the Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022;”.

Commencement Information

I374 Sch. 4 para. 30 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Higher Education (Wales) Act 2015 (anaw 1)

- 31 The Higher Education (Wales) Act 2015 is repealed.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I375 Sch. 4 para. 31 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I376 Sch. 4 para. 31 in force at 1.8.2024 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 3\(c\)\(iv\)](#) (with [arts. 28-42](#))

Well-being of Future Generations (Wales) Act 2015 (anaw 2)

- 32 (1) The Well-being of Future Generations (Wales) Act 2015 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 6 (meaning of public body), in subsection (1)(h), for “the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.
- (3) In section 32 (other partners), in subsection (1) for paragraph (e) substitute—
 “(e) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research;”.

Commencement Information

I377 Sch. 4 para. 32 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I378 Sch. 4 para. 32 in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 10\(1\)](#) (with [arts. 10\(2\), 28](#))

Violence against Women, Domestic Abuse and Sexual Violence (Wales) Act 2015 (anaw 3)

- 33 (1) The Violence against Women, Domestic Abuse and Sexual Violence (Wales) Act 2015 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 10 (guidance to further and higher education institutions)—
- (a) in subsection (1) for “The Welsh Ministers” substitute “The Commission for Tertiary Education and Research (“the Commission”)”;
 - (b) in subsection (2) for “The Higher Education Funding Council for Wales (“HEFCW”)” substitute “The Commission”;
 - (c) in subsection (3) for “the Welsh Ministers and HEFCW” substitute “the Commission”;
 - (d) in subsection (5) for “the Welsh Ministers and HEFCW” substitute “the Commission” and for “they consider” substitute “it considers”;
 - (e) omit subsection (8).

Commencement Information

I379 Sch. 4 para. 33 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I380 Sch. 4 para. 33(1)(2)(b)(e) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(k\)\(xvii\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

I381 Sch. 4 para. 33(2)(c) in force at 1.8.2024 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 3\(c\)\(v\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

I382 Sch. 4 para. 33(2)(d) in force at 1.8.2024 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 3\(c\)\(vi\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Qualifications Wales Act 2015 (anaw 5)

- 34 (1) The Qualifications Wales Act 2015 is amended as follows.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In section 34 (restriction on funding and provision of certain courses), in subsection (12) in the definition of “authorised body” after paragraph (b) insert—
“(c) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research;”.

Commencement Information

I383 Sch. 4 para. 34 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I384 Sch. 4 para. 34 in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(k\)\(xviii\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

PROSPECTIVE

Deregulation Act 2015 (c. 20)

- 35 (1) The Deregulation Act 2015 is amended as follows.
(2) In section 3 (apprenticeships), omit subsection (4).
(3) In Schedule 1 (apprenticeships)—
(a) in Part 2, omit paragraphs 9(a) and 15;
(b) omit Part 3.

Commencement Information

I385 Sch. 4 para. 35 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Environment (Wales) Act 2016 (anaw 3)

- 36 In section 10 of the Environment (Wales) Act 2016 (meaning of public body), in subsection (1)(f), for “the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.

Commencement Information

I386 Sch. 4 para. 36 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I387 Sch. 4 para. 36 in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(k\)\(xix\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Public Health (Wales) Act 2017 (anaw 2)

- 37 In section 110 of the Public Health (Wales) Act 2017 (meaning of public body), in subsection (1)(h), for “the Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.

Commencement Information

I388 Sch. 4 para. 37 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I389 Sch. 4 para. 37 in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(k\)\(xx\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Higher Education and Research Act 2017 (c. 29)

- 38 (1) The Higher Education and Research Act 2017 is amended as follows.
- (2) In Schedule 11 (minor and consequential amendments relating to Part 1), omit paragraphs 7, 8, 11, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 20, 22, 24, 25, 26(3) and (4).

Commencement Information

I390 Sch. 4 para. 38 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

I391 Sch. 4 para. 38(1) in force at 1.8.2024 by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 2\(k\)\(xxi\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

I392 Sch. 4 para. 38(2) in force at 1.8.2024 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2024/806](#), [art. 3\(c\)\(vii\)](#) (with [art. 28](#))

PROSPECTIVE

Additional Learning Needs and Education Tribunal (Wales) Act 2018 (anaw 2)

- 39 (1) The Additional Learning Needs and Education Tribunal (Wales) Act 2018 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 4 (additional learning needs code), in subsection (3), after paragraph (c) insert—
- “(ca) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research;
(cb) the Welsh Ministers;”.
- (3) In section 5 (procedure for making the additional learning needs code), in subsection (1), after paragraph (d) insert—
- “(da) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research;”.
- (4) In section 50 (Welsh Ministers’ duties to secure post-16 education and training), omit subsections (2) to (4).
- (5) In section 65 (duties to provide information and other help), in subsection (4) after paragraph (d) insert—
- “(da) the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research;
(db) the Welsh Ministers;”.

Commencement Information

I393 Sch. 4 para. 39 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

The Welsh Language Standards (No. 6) Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017/90)

- 40 (1) The Welsh Language Standards (No. 6) Regulations 2017 are amended as follows.
- (2) In regulation 3(4) for “The Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “the Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.

Commencement Information

I394 Sch. 4 para. 40 not in force at Royal Assent, see [s. 148\(2\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation: Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

I395 Sch. 4 para. 40 in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, **art. 2(k)(xxii)** (with art. 28)

Public Services Ombudsman (Wales) Act 2019 (anaw 3)

- 41 In Schedule 3 to the Public Services Ombudsman (Wales) Act 2019 (listed authorities), under the sub-heading “Education and training” for “The Higher Education Funding Council for Wales” substitute “The Commission for Tertiary Education and Research”.

Commencement Information

I396 Sch. 4 para. 41 not in force at Royal Assent, see **s. 148(2)**

I397 Sch. 4 para. 41 in force at 1.8.2024 by S.I. 2024/806, **art. 2(k)(xxiii)** (with art. 28)

Status:

Point in time view as at 01/08/2024. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

Changes to legislation:

Tertiary Education and Research (Wales) Act 2022 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 13 August 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.